This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

ENGLISH HISTORY SIMPLIFIED

J. S. LAURIE.

228 f. 207.

Lord Nithsdale's escape from the Tower.

Page 249.

MANUAL

OF

ENGLISH HISTORY

SIMPLIFIED;

OR,

OUR COUNTRY'S STORY,

TOLD BY A LADY.

EDITED BY J. S. LAURIE,

(Formerly H.M. Inspector of Schools.)

LONDON:
THOMAS MURBY, 32, BOUVERIE STREET, E.C.;
AND
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO., E.C.

1866.

⁂ *This work can be used as a sequel to the* MANUAL OF PRACTICAL COMPOSITION, *after the following plan:—When the pupil has thoroughly read a chapter, he should be set to re-write it, with no other aid than the headings contained in the* ANALYSIS OF CONTENTS, *either dictated or written on the black board. During this lesson, the book should of course be securely put away. All the Appendices also furnish materials for supplementary questions.*

HENDERSON, RAIT, and FENTON, 23, Berners Street, Oxford Street, W.

PREFACE.

THE want of an English History, at once concise, attractive, and cheap, has long been felt. Several years back, Earl Russell called public attention to this singular gap in our popular literature; and, whether as a result or a coincidence, various efforts have since been made to fill it. But, excellently as, for example, Mr. Knight's aims have been carried out, his lordship's appeal for a distinctly specified "People's History" has not yet been answered. Obviously no work can lay claim to that title, if, by its cost, it is practically inaccessible to, or, by its bulk, fitted to daunt, the class for whom it has been designed; and it is equally certain that, however small and cheap it may be, a technical summary and dreary statement of events is neither what is specified nor a peculiarly rare article in the market.

The difficulty of popularizing so many-sided a subject is to select points of importance blended with interest, or, at all risks, to make important points interesting; and so to range them as to present an impressive panoramic view of the subject as a whole. To be true, it is not necessary that the pictures should be overcrowded with minutiæ of secondary, and perhaps purely arbitrary, moment; for these serve but to embarrass and distract the attention, and consequently to mar or defeat the main object. It is not by con-

densing much matter into a small compass, nor by elaborate research, but by singling out salient and picturesque features and linking them together in a chronological chain, that history—in its common, limited, acceptation—can be made sufficiently alluring and advantageous to the young and the adult masses. The prevailing ignorance on this subject cannot fairly be imputed to indifference, so long as the existing means of curing it are grossly inadequate; and, as a branch of instruction, the loathing with which it is commonly viewed by the young, is due rather to the unfortunately stereotyped method of injudicious cramming with the dry husks of events, than to any inherent repulsiveness in the nature of the subject.

Something in the style of Mr. Dickens' charming "Child's History," but somewhat smaller and considerably cheaper, has hitherto been the desideratum —a work that should be at once handy and sufficiently comprehensive for practical purposes; that should faithfully record leading events, tolerantly portray the struggles that marked the growth of our civil and religious liberty, delineate with patriotic, youth-inspiring feeling the personal deeds that first achieved for England her prowess among the nations, and indicate her successive strides in the arts of life and commercial enterprise—all written in a simply natural strain and idiomatic "Saxon-English."

It was with no small pleasure that the editor found in the present volume—at first modestly submitted for his opinion—a close approximation to a combination of the characteristics required; and he therefore lends a willing hand to help the authoress to launch her tiny, unpretentious bark on an ocean dotted with many a rival craft, but with none of similar build, rig, and cost.

*** The authoress desires to specify *Knight's Pictorial History*, and *Macintosh's English History*, as her leading guide-books.

Period the First.

THE ROMAN INVASION.

(55 B.C.)

To the end of the Norman Line (1154).

THE SAXON LINE.

Egbert	827— 836
Ethelwulf	836— 856
Ethelbald	856— 860
Ethelbert	860— 866
Ethelred	866— 871
Alfred	871— 901
Edward the Elder	901— 925
Athelstane	925— 941
Edmund	941— 946
Edred	946— 955
Edwy	955— 959
Edgar	959— 975
Edward the Martyr	975— 978
Ethelred the Unready	978—1016
Edmund Ironside	1016—1016

DANISH.

Canute	1017—1036
Harold Harefoot	1036—1040
Hardicanute	1040—1042

SAXON.

Edward the Confessor	1042—1066
Harold the Saxon	1066—1066

THE NORMAN LINE.

William the Conqueror	1066—1087
William Rufus	1087—1100
Henry the First	1100—1135
Stephen	1135—1154

OUR COUNTRY'S STORY.

CHAPTER I.

BRITAIN UNDER THE ROMANS (55 B. C.—450).

1. FIFTY-FIVE years before the birth of Christ, this island of Great Britain, in which we live, was inhabited by people who were little better than barbarians. They were divided into tribes, each tribe being governed by a chief or king; but one sovereign did not rule over the whole country as now.

2. The people who lived near the coast were the most civilised. They cultivated the land, and wore clothes made of a kind of cloth, which they manufactured themselves. Their dress was a tunic, or sort of frock, trowsers, and a short cloak, and they had bracelets of gold and silver, and iron. The other inhabitants of the island lived on milk and flesh, as they did not know how to grow corn, and they dressed in the skins of the beasts they had killed; while those parts of their bodies that were uncovered they often painted.

3. The country looked very different then from what it does now. A great deal of it was covered with forests and marshes; and wild boars, and bisons, and deer, and wolves, ran wild in the thick woods.

When the Britons wanted to build a town, they used to cut down some of the tall trees, and so clear a place for their houses, which were poor huts without windows or chimneys, and roofed with the skins of beasts, or with turf, or boughs.

4. Then they made banks and ditches to protect their towns from enemies, and they spent much more care and labour in making these defences than they employed in building their houses; for they raised great walls of stone, many feet thick, to guard their dwellings; and as there were no cannon in those days, it was difficult to injure them.

5. You will guess that the cottages of the Britons were not very comfortably furnished. They had rough chairs and stools, and they were clever at making baskets. They used to hang their spears and bows and arrows on the walls of their huts. They had no proper beds, but slept on the floor, keeping themselves warm with mantles and skins.

6. They made some of their boats, which were called *coracles*, of wicker-work. They were very skilful in taming horses, and in battle, some of their soldiers rode on horse-back, armed with shields, and lances, and swords. They had dreadful war-chariots, too, which generally held two or more fighting-men, besides a driver, and they had sharp scythes and hooks fastened to the axles and other parts, which did terrible injury to their enemies, when the chariots were driven in among them.

7. The Britons were heathens. They did not worship the true God only, for though they believed in one Almighty Being, they had many other gods

besides, to whom they sacrificed animals, and sometimes even human victims. Their priests, who were called Druids, had great power and privileges. They acted as judges, paid no taxes, and were not required to fight in time of war.

8. The Druids were almost the only persons among the Britons who had any learning, and they had very little. There were no schools or books for children, so they were scarcely ever taught to read or write. The Druids were the only teachers, and all who had any knowledge learnt it from them.

9. The Britons considered the oak a sacred tree, and they had thick groves of it, where the spreading branches almost shut out the light. The misletoe, which sometimes grows upon the oak, they especially reverenced. Some of their places of worship were made by surrounding pieces of ground with immense stones, and there was no roof but the sky. A remarkable temple of this kind, called Stonehenge, is still standing in Wiltshire. Four great stones placed upright, with a huge flat one at the top, made a cromlech, or altar.

10. While Britain was in the state I have described, it was invaded by the Romans, under Julius Cæsar. The Romans were then the most powerful nation in the world. Their chief city was Rome, in Italy, and it was a grand and wonderful place. The Romans had conquered most of the known parts of Europe, Asia, and Africa, and were masters of the world, but there were large countries of which they knew nothing, for travelling was much more difficult then than it is now.

11. Julius Cæsar, a great Roman general, led an army into France, or, as it was then called, Gaul, and made most of the inhabitants submit to him; and then, you know, from the north coast of France he could see the shores of Britain, and he thought that he would sail across the channel with his soldiers, and conquer Britain too.

12. It was fifty-five years before the birth of Christ, that Julius Cæsar and his army landed in Kent, somewhere between Walmer Castle and Sandwich. The Britons assembled on the shore, and fought with them, but the Romans, who had far better weapons than the poor natives, and were much more skilful soldiers, gained a victory. There was some more fighting, but when winter drew near, Julius Cæsar made peace with the Britons, and went away.

13. The next year he came back with eight hundred vessels. The British tribes chose Cassivelaunus to be their commander-in-chief, and then retired into their deep forests, where the Romans found it difficult to pursue them. But though the Britons were brave, they were not equal to the well-trained Roman soldiers, and at last Cassivelaunus and the other British chiefs offered to pay tribute to Julius Cæsar.

14. Then he quitted the island, and for nearly 100 years the Britons were left to themselves, and in the course of that time Christ was born in a stable at Bethlehem, a village of Palestine, the country of the Jews, which was then under the power of the Romans.

15. Those people who believed Christ to be the Son of God were called Christians; but at the time

of which I am telling you, very few Romans were Christians; but some of them who had become Christians, when they went to Britain, taught the doctrines of Christianity to those of the poor natives who were willing to listen to them.

16. I have said that the Romans did not return to Britain for 100 years; but at the end of that time they came back again. One of the British chiefs, named Caractacus, placed himself at the head of an army, and fought very bravely against the Romans; but the Britons were defeated, and Caractacus was made prisoner and sent to Rome.

17. He was led in chains by his conquerors through the beautiful city of Rome. He behaved with great dignity, for he felt that it was no fault of his that he was a captive. He looked with surprise at the grand houses and temples, for he had never seen anything half so splendid before, and he said, "How is it possible that a people possessed of such magnificence at home could envy me a humble cottage in Britain?" The Romans so admired the manly patience with which Caractacus bore his misfortunes, that they felt sorry for him, and gave him his freedom.

18. The Romans still continued fighting with the Britons. They resolved to take possession of the island of Anglesea, where a great many Druids lived. As soon as the Romans landed there, they saw that the hills were covered with soldiers, and with women dressed in mourning, who were holding torches in their hands, while the Druids stood beside them, praying for help.

19. The Romans were very much astonished at

this sight, but they quickly attacked and put to death great numbers of the Druids and other Britons who were there, and then cut down the sacred groves of trees, in which human beings had sometimes been put to death as sacrifices. After this, the Britons once more gained the upper hand, and seized London, which was at that time a Roman town, and killed all the Romans who were there.

20. At last, the Romans and Britons fought a great battle. The Britons were commanded by one of their queens, named Boadicea, who had been most shamefully treated by the Romans. Before the fight began, she made a speech to her soldiers, standing up in one of her terrible war-chariots, and implored them to punish the Romans for the injuries she had received.

21. But Boadicea's courage was in vain; her army was defeated, and it is said that eighty thousand Britons were slain in the battle. She was determined not to be a prisoner, and she killed herself by taking poison. There was much more fighting after this. But we will go on to the year 78, when a Roman, named Julius Agricola, was appointed governor of Britain.

22. He tried to conquer the northern part of our island, which is now called Scotland, and was then called Caledonia. The inhabitants of Caledonia bore the names of Picts and Scots. He gained some victories over them, and then they fled to their mountains, where the Romans could not follow them. Julius Agricola strengthened and established the power of the Romans through the greater part of Britain.

23. He was the best governor that the Romans

ever sent to rule the Britons; and after his battles were over, for thirty years, peace and quiet continued throughout the island; he tried to teach the inhabitants, and to govern them kindly. Indeed, the Romans greatly improved Britain in every way. They made capital firm roads, many of which are lasting to this day, where before there had been no roads at all; they built fine temples, and large comfortable houses, and taught the Britons to make better dwellings for themselves then their miserable huts.

24. Britain, on the whole, was in a state of prosperity, the greater part of the time that it belonged to Rome. The inhabitants became much more civilised, many of them were Christians, and some of these chose to suffer death, rather than give up their faith; for some of the heathen Roman emperors, as the kings of Rome were then called, imprisoned, and put to death great numbers of Christians in all parts of their dominions. After a time, the Britons were given the same rights and privileges as the Roman citizens.

25. I told you how the Picts and Scots took refuge in their mountains, where they could live in freedom. Sometimes they would come down in large numbers, and fight with the Romans and Britons. The Romans therefore built a great wall, to keep back the Picts and Scots. This wall extended from the river Tyne to the Solway Frith, and some of its ruins are still to be seen.

26. At last the Romans found that they were wanted in their own country. Their power had long been declining; and many of the later governors

they appointed in Britain rebelled and made themselves emperors of Britain, and ruled as they pleased. Rome had been for ages the mistress of the world, but she was so no longer, and 500 years after Julius Cæsar had landed in Kent, the Romans left our shores, never to come back any more. It was about 450 years after the birth of Christ that the Romans went away.

1. Who were the first inhabitants of Britain?
2. What kind of clothing and shelter had they?
3. What were their priests called?
4. Who first invaded Britain, 55 B.C.?
5. Who were the Romans?
6. Who was the best Roman governor?
7. When did the Romans abandon the country?

CHAPTER II.

SAXON CONQUESTS (450—871).

1. A SHORT time before the Romans left Britain, all the better part of the British army had been taken away, to fight in Gaul, by two Romans, who had endeavoured to become emperors of Britain. This loss made the Britons weak, when their masters deserted them. Besides this, as soon as their Roman rulers were gone, the Britons became divided into two parties, and could not agree what it was best to do.

2. They were greatly distressed by the Picts and Scots, who came over the great wall, and ravaged the country. In their misery they sent to the Romans, begging them to return. But the Romans had enough to do, fighting for their own country, and

could not come. So the poor Britons asked the Saxons to help them.

3. The Saxons were a brave, bold, energetic people, who had settled themselves near the river Elbe, in Germany, and had conquered most of the country round them. They loved the sea, and were remarkable for the skill with which they managed their little vessels, and the courage that they showed in undertaking what were then considered long voyages. They were all idolaters, and there were many cruel customs connected with their faith.

4. It was a British chief, named Vortigern, who invited the Saxons to come to Britain, and help him to conquer the Picts and Scots; and two Saxon chiefs, named Hengist and Horsa, who were brothers, crossed the sea in their ships, and landed with 1,600 men at the isle of Thanet, in Kent. They were well armed with spears and daggers, swords, battle-axes, bows and arrows, and sometimes with a club, or great hammer, a very formidable weapon. After a time, Vortigern married Rowena, the beautiful daughter of Hengist.

5. The Saxons defeated the Picts and Scots, and then they thought that they should like to have this country for themselves; so they began to fight with the poor Britons, whom they despised because they were Christians. More Saxons came over, and the fighting went on for a length of time until at last the Saxons were masters of most of the island.

6. Still their conquest was a very slow one. It took nearly 200 years to complete it. However, they were stronger than the Britons, and drove them into

Wales, and Cornwall, and Cumberland. These parts they did not subdue, nor were they able to conquer the Picts and Scots, who maintained their independence in the rugged mountains of the Highlands of Caledonia. There are many tales told of a British chief, called Arthur, who fought bravely with the Saxons, but in vain.

7. When the Saxons had gained possession of Britain, they divided it into seven kingdoms, each of which was governed by a king or chief of its own; and one of these chiefs was called the Bretwalda, and was considered at the head of all the others. These kingdoms are known in history by the name of the Saxon Heptarchy. Heptarchy is a word that means seven kingdoms.

8. In a little while the Saxons began to fight among themselves; and, if I could, I would not wish to tell you of all the tumult and bloodshed that filled Britain for a long time. At last, some Christian missionaries came to this country. All the Saxons, you know, were heathens, though many of the Britons had become Christians in time of the Romans, yet in the terrible wars with the Saxons, Christianity had been almost forgotten.

9. I will tell you how it was that missionaries first thought of coming to Britain. You will be astonished to hear that in by-gone times, children in this country were sometimes sold as slaves, and sent far away into other lands. On one occasion, some Anglo-Saxons (for the Saxons who settled in Britain were often called Anglo-Saxons) were sold into slavery, and taken to Rome.

10. While these poor children were standing in

the market-place, a good monk, named Gregory, passed by. He stopped to look at them, because he was so struck with their beauty, their blue eyes, and long fair hair, of which the Saxons were so proud. They were quite different in their appearance from the dark-eyed, black-haired natives of the south of Europe.

11. He asked to what nation they belonged. He was told that they were Angles, which meant Anglo-Saxons; when he said, "They would not be Angles, but Angels, if they were Christians." He thought so much of the fair children and their country, that he wished to go himself to Britain, to teach the inhabitants the doctrines of Christianity; but this he could not do.

12. The good Gregory, however, did not forget them, and some years later he sent a monk named Augustine, with forty others, to Britain, to convert the Saxons, and these missionaries landed at the Isle of Thanet in 596. Augustine immediately sent one of his monks to Ethelbert, the King of Kent, who was also the Bretwalda, asking his favour and protection.

13. Now, though Ethelbert was a pagan, his beautiful wife, Bertha, a French lady, was a Christian; and when she married him, he had promised her that he would let her worship her own God. Some Christian priests came to England with her, and the king let her have an old church near Canterbury, where they used to preach to her.

14. When the missionaries landed in Kent, Ethelbert knew that they believed in the same religion that Bertha did, and very likely this inclined him to treat them kindly. He said he would meet them in

the open air, and hear what they had to say. Augustine and his forty monks walked in procession to the place, carrying a crucifix, that is a cross, with a figure of Christ on it, and they sang anthems as they went.

15. Ethelbert listened attentively, while they told him about their religion, and when they had finished, he said that he did not mean to give up his gods, but he was quite willing for the missionaries to teach his subjects, if his subjects liked to hear them. Of course the good monks were very glad to have this permission.

16. They went about the country, telling the Saxons of the true God, and of His commandments; and when the people saw how blameless and pious the missionaries were in their lives, some of them began to think that it must be the true religion which taught the monks to be so kind and good, and they became Christians too.

17. At last, Ethelbert himself was baptized, and ten thousand of his subjects at the same time. The doctrines taught by the monks spread rapidly. When Edwin, the King of Northumberland, a powerful monarch, was inclined to embrace Christianity, he called his nobles together, that they might talk about the pagan and Christian religion, and settle which was best.

18. They sent for one of the missionaries, named Paulinus, to tell them about his faith; and they listened to him, and many felt that he was right; and the pagan priest got up on horseback, and rode very fast to the temple where their stone god was kept,

and threw a spear into the sacred place, and the temple was pulled down, and the people of Northumberland declared themselves believers in the true God.

19. In ninety years from the time that Augustine landed in Kent, all the Saxons professed themselves Christians. We may be sure that some of them really loved God, and wished to serve Him, but I am afraid that many cared very little about their new religion, and you know it is no use for people to call themselves Christians unless they try to do what is right and good.

20. By this time all England belonged to the Saxons, and it was they who first gave the name of England to our country. About the year 795, a prince, named Egbert, became king of Wessex, one of the kingdoms into which England was divided, and he was so clever and powerful, that all the other kings in England were generally obliged to obey his commands, and do what he chose.

21. The country was now getting into a more peaceful and orderly state. The kings did not fight much with each other, because they were all afraid of Egbert; but before he died, a fierce race of people, called Danes, came to interfere with the Saxons, and tried to get England for themselves. They came from the countries that are now called Sweden, Norway, and Denmark, but which then had only one name, Scandinavia.

22. We may call the Danes and Saxons relations, for though the Saxons came from Germany, they had lived in Scandinavia before, and had travelled down further and further into Europe, till they reached

Germany, and, at last, England, where they settled, and became Christians, and led more civilised and industrious lives. But the Danes were all heathens, and cruel, and savage.

23. The Danes, like the Saxons, were good sailors, and they used to come to the coast of England in their little vessels, and find some place that was unprotected, and land there, steal all they could lay their hands on, kill many of the poor people, and then go back to their vessels again. King Egbert gained one great victory over them, but soon afterwards he died, and his son Ethelwulf reigned instead, over Wessex, or West Saxony.

24. During his reign the Danes continued to invade the country: he fought one great battle with them, in which they were defeated, and a large number of them killed. The next king was Ethelwulf's eldest son, Ethelbald; and Ethelbald was succeeded by his brother, Ethelbert, during whose reign the country was more than ever distressed by the Danes.

25. These fierce robbers now constantly appeared in almost every part of England. They burnt the city of Winchester, and settled themselves in the Isle of Thanet, in Kent. Ethelbert died about the year 866, and the next king was his brother, Ethelred, who fought nine battles with the Danes in one single year, so you may guess in what misery the country then was.

26. Besides being so fierce, the Danes were very faithless. If they made promises, they did not keep them. Once they said they would go away from Kent, if the people there would give them some money; but

when they had got the money, instead of leaving, they killed and stole all round the neighbourhood.

27. By this time they had taken possession, not only of the Isle of Thanet, but also of most of the country that lies between the river Tweed and the Humber; while five counties below the Humber had been ravaged by them. When things were in this dreadful state, Ethelred died, in consequence of being wounded in one of his conflicts with the Danes, and his youngest brother, Alfred, the favourite son of Ethelwulf, was his successor on the throne.

1. Who invited the Saxons to England; and why?
2. What was the result?
3. Explain the words Heptarchy and Bretwalda?
4. In whose reign and by whom was Christianity introduced?
5. What new people invaded the country?
6. What parts did they occupy?

CHAPTER III.

ALFRED THE GREAT (871—901).

1. KING ALFRED is known in history by the title of Alfred the Great, and he well deserved the name, for he was one of the best kings that ever reigned in England. Though he was of such high rank, and very clever, yet so little did persons study in those days, unless they were priests, that he was twelve years old before he could read.

2. You will be less surprised at this when I tell you that in those days the art of printing was unknown. There were very few books indeed, those

few were all written with pen and ink, which took a very long time to do. And, besides the scarcity of books, those were such unsettled times, that people thought a great deal more about learning how to fight than how to read.

3. One day, however, when Alfred was a beautiful boy of twelve, his step-mother, Judith, read some Anglo-Saxon songs to him and his brothers from one of these written books, which was beautifully coloured and ornamented. The boys admired it very much, and then their mother said, "I will give it to the one among you who first learns to read it."

"Will you?" cried Alfred, who was the youngest, and he took the book from her hand and directly began to learn to read. Most likely he asked some monk to teach him. In a little while he was able to read the beautiful book, and no doubt his mother felt great pleasure in giving it to him. He was twenty-two years old when his elder brother died; and he became king in 871.

5. The country was in a miserable state when he was called to govern it. At first, when the Danes invaded England, they had come in the summer, and left before winter, but now they had been settled here for seven years, and it was clear that they never meant to go away again. Alfred had not been king more than a month before his army had to fight a battle with the Danes, in which the latter were conquered.

6. The next spring, the Danes went into Lincolnshire, and set fire to the houses, and killed numbers of the poor people; but they did not go near Wessex,

where Alfred was. While the good king was thus left in quiet for a little time, he thought it would be a wise plan to use vessels in fighting with the Danes, because then, when a fresh set of them came over, his men might meet them, and conquer them, before they could land in England.

7. This was the beginning of that great English navy which has since performed such wonderful deeds and gained countless victories. Alfred's navy was a very little one, but it did him good service. The first time it attacked the Danish vessels, it defeated them. Then the Danes offered to make peace with Alfred, and to go away from Wessex, and swear a solemn oath that they would keep their word.

8. But not many hours after, as Alfred was riding by night, to Winchester, with only a few soldiers, these faithless Danes fell on his little party, killed most of them, and the king himself escaped with difficulty. Soon the Danes prepared a large fleet of ships, with which to attack Alfred, but a great storm arose and destroyed very many of the Danish vessels, and the rest were quite defeated by Alfred's navy.

9. Up to this time the Danes had always been quiet in the winter, and began their fighting and plundering in the bright days of spring, but now they resolved to attack the Saxons when the latter felt quite safe, and so one night, soon after Christmas, when Alfred and many of his nobles and soldiers were assembled in the Castle at Chippenham, there suddenly arose a cry that the Danes had come; and the Saxon warriors started up, seized their swords and battle-axes, and tried to prevent their enemies from entering.

10. But the Saxons struggled in vain; they were overpowered by the Danes, and many were slain; but Alfred, with a few followers, managed to escape to the neighbouring moors. It is probable that he fought several battles with the Danes after this, but many of his soldiers were killed, and many others entirely discouraged. So at last he saw that it was impossible for him to fight any more for the time; that he must hide himself for awhile and wait to see what could be done.

11. In the county of Somersetshire is a little island, still called the Isle of Athelney, which means the Noble's Island. It is now a peaceful, well-cultivated place, where cows feed in the green fields all the year round, and little lambs play about in spring, and the ripe corn is reaped in autumn; but in King Alfred's time it was a thick forest, where the fierce wild boar, whose tusks gave such dreadful wounds, prowled about, and graceful deer ran wild. And it was here that Alfred and some of his faithful followers concealed themselves.

12. One day when the king was wandering about, dressed like a poor man, he stopped at the door of a little hut, belonging to a swine-herd, and asked if he might come in. The swine-herd and his wife never once thought it was the king, but they told him he was welcome to stay in their cottage if he liked.

13. One morning while he was there, the woman asked him to watch some cakes that were baking, while she went out. So he sat down near the fire and took out his bow and arrows, that he might examine them, and attend to the cakes at the same

time. But most likely as soon as he was left alone, he began to think how best to drive away the Danes, and forgot about the cakes, and when the woman came in they were all burnt, and she scolded him well for his carelessness, not dreaming he was the king.

14. Meanwhile, a great Danish chief, named Hubba, tried to land with his army in Devonshire, but the men of Devon drove him back, and killed him and hundreds of his men, and they also took possession of the Danish flag, on which was the figure of a raven, worked by three noble ladies.

15. Alfred was very glad to hear of this victory; but he wanted to know more of the position of the enemy; so he dressed himself like a harper, and took a harp in his hand, and went into the Danish camp, and while the Danes were listening to the music, he looked about him and discovered what he wanted to know. Then he went away without their finding out who he was.

16. Then he sent a message to several of his powerful nobles, asking them to assemble on a certain day on the borders of Selwood forest in Somersetshire. They joyfully obeyed, and came with all their followers, and every man was delighted to see his king again, and ready to go with him to battle. Then he placed himself at the head of his army, and led them forth to fight against the Danes, and won such a great victory, that the Danes were completely conquered, and obliged to submit to Alfred on any terms.

17. The king said that if Guthrun, the Danish chief, would be baptized, and would leave Wessex, he

would give him all the north-eastern part of England between the Tweed and the Thames, where the Danes might settle and live peaceably. Guthrun agreed to this, and he kept his word and was always true to Alfred; and he and his Danes established themselves in their part of the country, which was called the Danelagh, or Dane-law, and became much more industrious.

18. Alfred had not quite got rid of the Danes even then, for fresh hordes came over and annoyed him sometimes; but he defeated them and drove them away. Then when he had freed his country from these fierce enemies, he turned all his attention to the improvement of his people, and tried to make them wiser and better. He found most of them very, very ignorant, so he invited learned men from all parts of Europe to come to England; and he encouraged education and manufactures.

19. He taught his subjects to build better ships and to make more comfortable houses. He sent a brave monk to India, to make some discoveries there, and such a journey was considered a terrible undertaking in those days; he conversed with travellers, and wrote down what they told him about foreign countries, that his people might read it.

20. In those days there were very few books; and, as I told you, they were all written, not printed, and were therefore very expensive. Besides, they were generally written in Latin, the language that the Romans spoke, and none but those who understood Latin could read them. Alfred, therefore, translated some of these books into English, for the benefit of

his subjects. He improved the laws, and watched carefully to see that they were properly obeyed.

21. He also wrote poetry; and I think he could never have been idle. It was wonderful how he could do so much. He divided his time into three parts; and portioned out the twenty-four hours in this way—eight hours for reading, writing, and the duties of religion; eight for the business of the kingdom; and eight for sleeping, eating, and taking exercise. There were no clocks or watches in England then, and I will tell you how King Alfred managed to know the time.

22. He had candles made exactly the same size; they would burn a certain number of hours; he also put marks on each candle, and when it burnt down to the first mark, he knew so many minutes had passed, and so on. But he found that when the wind was high the candles burnt too fast; so he invented horn lanterns to put them in; and then they burnt steadily.

23. All these labours for others were performed by King Alfred, while he was suffering under a terrible disease which caused him great pain, and which his doctors could not cure. He worked long and earnestly for the good of his country; and was so careful always to speak the truth, that he was called the "Truth-Teller." He died at the age of 53, after he had reigned 30 years. His memory is honoured still, and ever will be—the good, great, gentle Alfred, one of the best and noblest of kings.

1. When did Alfred become king?
2. Whom had he to struggle against?
3. Where had he to conceal himself?
4. Where did he re-assemble his warriors?
5. What terms did he make with Guthrun?
6. How did he contrive to mark the time?

CHAPTER IV.

EDWARD, ATHELSTANE, EDMUND (901—1017).

1. ALFRED the Great was succeeded on the throne by his son Edward, called the Elder, who began to reign in 901. A good deal of his life was spent in fighting with the Danes in the Danelagh. He was generally successful in forcing them to be quiet. His sister, Ethelfleda, was a remarkable woman; she several times fought with the Danes and defeated them, and she also gained a victory over the Welsh. Edward the Elder made the Danes, the Welsh, and some of the inhabitants of the south of Scotland, acknowledge his power, and died after a reign of 24 years.

2. His son Athelstane then became king in 925. He extended his kingdom by conquest, as his father had done. In 937, he gained such a great victory over the Danes, that they troubled him no more while he lived. Many princes from other countries came to his court, and he made himself feared and respected; but four years after his great victory he died, when only 46.

3. Athelstane's brother, Edmund, then became king when but eighteen years of age. His short reign was passed in strife. He conquered Cumberland from the Britons, who still possessed some parts of the country, and gave it to Malcolm, King of Scotland, on condition that he should do homage for it; which means, acknowledge Edmund as his superior lord. After Edmund had reigned six years, he met with a violent death in this manner:—

4. One day he was feasting with some of his

nobles, when he saw that a well-known robber, named Leof, whom he had once banished, was among the company, sitting at the table. The king was very angry, and Leof was ordered to leave the room, but he refused to go; and Edmund rushed on him, and seized him by the hair, and then the robber stabbed the king, and killed him.

5. Edred was the next king. When he died, Edwy, a boy of sixteen or seventeen, ascended the throne. There is not much I need tell you about him, except the sad story of his young wife. There was a clever monk living then, called Dunstan, and he and the king seemed to have quarrelled, and did not like each other at all. Edwy married a beautiful lady named Elgiva, and Dunstan did not approve of his doing so.

6. On the day that Edwy was crowned, he left the hall where his nobles were eating and drinking and went to sit down with Elgiva and her mother. His nobles were vexed at his leaving them, and Dunstan was so angry, that he went into the room where Edwy was, and saying many insulting things, dragged him back by force to the hall.

7. The king was greatly displeased, as he well might be, and he sent Dunstan out of the kingdom and, it is said, tried to put his eyes out; for such horrible things were sometimes done in those times. Many people who took Dunstan's part, rebelled against Edwy, and they were headed by Odo, an archbishop. Some of these rebels stole Elgiva away from her husband, and had her beautiful face burnt with a hot iron, and sent her to Ireland.

8. She was kindly treated there; and when the wound on her face was healed, she went back to England, as beautiful as ever, and hastened to meet her husband, but some cruel men seized her near Gloucester, and barbarously murdered her. It is thought that neither Dunstan nor Odo had any part in this wicked act, but that it was the deed of some of their followers.

9. Soon afterwards, Edwy died; some think of a broken heart; others suppose that he was killed. He was not more than nineteen at the time of his death. He was succeeded as king by his brother Edgar, who was but fifteen years of age. He kept on good terms with Dunstan and the other monks, and they governed the kingdom for him, and they ruled with firmness, and improved the country.

10. Up to this time, the people of Wales had paid a sum of money every year to the King of England; but Edgar, who wished to get rid of the wolves which were then found in the woods, told the Welsh that instead of paying him money, they should bring the heads of three hundred wolves each year. And it is said that soon all the wolves were killed.

11. Edgar, himself, was a bad man, but, as I told you, he gave up to others the government of his kingdom. He was twice married. His second wife was named Elfrida. She was a handsome, but very wicked woman; and when Edgar died, she resolved that her own son, Ethelred, should reign instead of Edward, who was the son of Edgar's first wife.

12. She managed to gain her point in a most dreadful manner. One day while the young king

Edward was riding on horseback alone near Corfe Castle, where Elfrida lived, he thought he would pay her a visit. After he had mounted his horse to leave, he asked for something to drink as he was thirsty.

13. This bad woman had some wine brought to him, but she told one of her servants to stab him in the back while he was drinking. The servant did so. The young king, feeling himself wounded, dropped the cup from his hand, and rode away as fast as he could; but fainting from loss of blood, he fell off his horse, and his foot catching in the stirrup, he was dragged along till he died. He was called Edward the Martyr, from the manner of his death.

14. Ethelred was only ten years old at this time. He loved his half-brother, Edward, and was shocked and distressed at his murder. When his mother saw his tears, she was very angry, and beat him so cruelly that she nearly killed him. The people of England were most unwilling for her son to become king, but there was no one else suitable, and therefore Ethelred was crowned.

15. For a while, Elfrida no doubt thought that her horrible plan had succeeded; but such wicked people suffer sooner or later for their crimes. And so it came to pass that every one hated Elfrida, and she was deprived of her power and influence, and went to live in retirement. Then she began to build monasteries for monks to live in, thinking that by giving money for religious purposes she could atone for her sins. But this was a great mistake. She could not thus wash the stain of blood from her soul.

16. Ethelred now became king, and he had a most

unhappy reign. He was called the Unready, because he had so little courage and resolution. His troubles were caused by the Danes. Some of these people used to collect in little vessels, under one of their chiefs, and sail about to different countries, plundering and destroying in all directions. The leaders of these robber-fleets were called sea-kings.

17. These sea-kings now again attacked different ports of the English coast, and caused great distress. Ethelred was a weak-minded man, and he told them that if they would go away, he would give them ten thousand pounds. So they took the money and left England; but they soon came back again, as the foolish king might have expected. Then the Danes living in the Danelagh, which was all the northern part of England, joined their countrymen, so that Ethelred had enemies at home and abroad.

18. Three times he gave the sea-kings money to leave the country; but in a very little while they returned. Once or twice a fleet and army were prepared by Ethelred to meet them, but he had traitors among his own subjects, who gave the Danes notice, so that they escaped in safety. It was no wonder that Ethelred was despised by his subjects, but it was cowardly and wicked of them to injure their own country because they disliked the king.

19. The Danes who, in King Alfred's time had settled in the Danelagh and given up their roving habits, had become comparatively industrious and well-behaved; but those who came over with the sea-kings were wild, fierce pagans. Some of them remained in England, and they would come into the

houses of the Saxons, and eat and drink as much as they pleased, and do as they liked. The country was very wretched.

20. In 1002, Ethelred married Emma, the Flower of Normandy, sister of the Duke of that country. In this year he resolved to do a very terrible and a wicked deed. This was to murder all the Danes in his dominions: namely, all to the south of the Danelagh. His subjects agreed to this horrible plan, and on the 13th November, which was a festival day among the Danes, and when they were all unarmed, the Saxons suddenly attacked them, and slaughtered all they could find—men and helpless women, and innocent children.

21. When the news of this massacre reached Denmark, the Danes speedily resolved to be revenged. Sweyn, their king, fitted out a great many vessels, painted gaily, some of which had for figure-heads glittering images of wild beasts, and they bore bright flags, ornamented with gold and embroidery. Then they sailed away for England with hearts throbbing with hatred, and, landing near Exeter, began to lay the country waste, burning houses and murdering the people wherever they went.

22. After a time the Danes left, but only to return again. Ethelred gave them thirty-six thousand pounds to go away. Then he raised a fleet to fight with them if they should return; but his vessels were all wrecked, and when the Danes heard this, they soon appeared on the English coast again. They attacked Canterbury, which was bravely defended by the archbishop, but at last he was taken prisoner.

23. They offered to set him free for a small sum of money if he would advise the king to give them a great deal, but the archbishop replied, "I have no money, and I will not advise the king to dishonour himself." The savage Danes were enraged at his answer. "Gold, bishop, gold," they cried, and gathered around, with threatening looks and words. But the good archbishop was firm, and they cruelly murdered him. If Ethelred had had many nobles like him, I think he could soon have driven away the Danes.

24. For many years the land was full of misery. The Danes and Saxons were constantly fighting, and the Danes were the stronger. At last, Ethelred fled to Normandy, the country from which his wife came, and which is in the north of France. Then Sweyn was acknowledged King of England, but six weeks after he died; and Ethelred returned home. For three years there was fighting between him and Canute, the son of Sweyn, which was ended by the death of Ethelred.

25. His eldest son, Edmund Ironside, succeeded him. The people called him Ironside because of his courage. He was a brave and clever man; and after he and Canute had fought some battles, they agreed to divide the kingdom between them. Soon afterwards, Edmund Ironside was murdered by two of his servants, and Canute became king of all England in the year 1017.

1. What victories did Edward gain?
2. How did Edmund die?
3. Who was Elfrida?
4. How did she contrive to make her son king?
5. What were his name and character?
6. Who seized his crown?

CHAPTER V.

THE DANISH KINGS AND NORMAN CONQUEST (1017—1066).

1. CANUTE became king of England on the death of Edmund, 1017. At first he was guilty of some very cruel acts. He killed many Saxon chiefs, and said that any one who would bring him the head of an enemy should be dearer to him than a brother. He made prisoners of Edmund Ironside's two little children, and sent them to the King of Sweden, telling him not to let them trouble him any more.

2. Canute wished to have the poor little boys killed, but the Swedish king would not do anything so very horrible; and he sent them to the King of Hungary, who treated them kindly. One died; but the other grew up, married a German princess, and had three children; of whom I shall have something to tell you in another chapter.

3. Emma, the widow of Ethelred the Unready, lived for a while in Normandy, with her two children, when Canute offered to marry her. You might expect she would refuse him with disgust, but this heartless woman, who wished to live in grandeur, did really become the wife of Canute, who had caused her husband so much misery. She went to England with Canute, leaving her two children in Normandy, not caring to trouble herself about them.

4. Though Canute was harsh and cruel at first, after a time he ruled with justice, and was liked both by the Saxons and the Danes; and the country was more prosperous than it had been for many, many

years. Canute was a very powerful monarch; and his courtiers used sometimes to flatter him. They said that everything would obey him, even the sea.

5. To show them their folly, Canute ordered his chair to be placed on the sea-shore, when the tide was flowing, and as the great waves came rolling in, he commanded them to go back; but they only came nearer, and washed against his feet. Then Canute said to his nobles, that they could now see how small was the might of an earthly king, and that there was but one Being, and that was God, who could say to the great sea, "Thus far shalt thou go, and no farther."

6. Canute on his death, in 1036, left his dominions to be divided between his three sons, Sweyn, Harold, and Hardicanute; of these, only the last was Emma's child. Sweyn and Hardicanute had Demark and Norway, and Harold had England. The two sons of Etheldred and Emma were still in Normandy. Their names were Edward and Alfred. When they knew of Canute's death, Edward came over to England to see if he could gain the throne, which had once belonged to his father.

7. He was now obliged to return to Normandy, for his mother had no love for him or Alfred: she cared only for her son Hardicanute. Harold reigned in England until his death, but he lived only four years after he became king. He was a useless monarch. He was very fond of hunting; and could run so fast that he was called Harold Harefoot.

8. I will tell you one sad circumstance of his short reign. Ethelred's sons received a letter in Normandy;

which they thought came from their mother, inviting them to England. Alfred went, but was seized and cruelly murdered. Some think the letter was written by Harold, in order to get the princes into his power, but there is a good deal of mystery about the matter.

9. Harold was succeeded by his half-brother, Hardicanute, the son of Canute and Emma. He gave up all his time to his own pleasure, and made his subjects pay for it. When the city of Winchester refused to give him all the money he asked for, he had it burnt down. He was very gluttunous and intemperate, and, after a reign of two years, died from excess at a grand banquet.

10. Hardicanute was the last Danish king who ruled in England. He was succeeded by Edward, the son of Ethelred and Emma, who came from Normandy to inherit a throne. The Saxons were greatly pleased to have a Saxon monarch, and many of the Danes in England were quite willing that he should reign. He is known in history by the name of Edward the Confessor.

11. The person who was most active in getting Edward to be chosen king, was a Saxon nobleman, named Earl Godwin. He had once, it is said, been a cowherd, but he became very rich and powerful. Edward could not bear him, for he believed that the great earl had had a hand in prince Alfred's murder. However, he married Godwin's daughter, Editha, who was a lovely, gentle lady, but I am sorry to say that her husband greatly neglected her.

12. Edward the Confessor was a weak-minded man, and did not govern wisely. His people loved

him at first because he was a Saxon, but they soon became dissatisfied with him. Earl Godwin was extremely troublesome to the king; and at last they quarrelled, and the earl and his sons were obliged to leave England.

13. One reason why Edward the Confessor's subjects were displeased with him was because he invited so many Normans to live here, and bestowed honours and wealth on them instead of on the Saxons. It was quite right for him to be grateful to the Normans, for they had been kind to him; but it was not right to give them what belonged to his own people.

14. I must tell you a little more about the Normans or Northmen. They came from Norway, and belonged to the same race as the Saxons and Danes. These Normans worried the French king till, to keep them quiet, he gave them a province in the north of France, which they named Normandy, and settled there. The Normans did not call their ruler *king*, but *duke*.

15. Edward the Confessor had spent most of his life in Normandy, and when he came back to England he liked to have Normans about him, and he spoke their language and dressed in their fashion. He invited William, the Duke of Normandy, to visit him, and received him very kindly. They had private conversations together, but no one else knew what they said to each other when they were thus alone. When William went home Edward made him some handsome presents of horses, and other valuable things.

16. Soon afterwards, Earl Godwin returned to

England, and in a little time he died. One of his sons, named Harold, was wrecked near Normandy soon after his father's death; and as his vessel was lost he could not travel by water, so in order to reach his native land he was obliged to pass through Normandy. The Count of Ponthieu would have kept him as a prisoner, but Duke William insisted that he should be set at liberty.

17. William treated Harold with much attention; and told him that, when he was in England, Edward the Confessor had said, that in his will he meant to leave his throne to Duke William. Harold was not pleased to hear this, for he was very powerful in England, and he hoped to be king himself when Edward was dead.

18. The duke wanted Harold to promise that he would help him to gain the English crown; and Harold swore that he would do so. This was very wrong indeed, for he did not mean to keep his word, but he was afraid that William would imprison him, or kill him, if he refused. In those days, people were not nearly so well taught as we are now, and did not know so clearly as we know what a dreadfully wicked thing it is to swear falsely.

19. Soon after these circumstances, Edward the Confessor died. Then the great nobles, and the inhabitants of London, gathered together by thousands, and declared that Harold should be their king. Many of these who had heard about his oath to William felt uneasy, but they knew that he was in fear of his life when he took it. He governed justly and mercifully, and the people loved him.

20. As soon as William heard of these things he prepared to invade England. All the long, warm days of summer, when the bright sun was ripening the English harvest, William was engaged in collecting troops to lay the pleasant land desolate. Harold, too, was busy in raising an army to resist the Normans, but he had other enemies to meet first.

21. His own brother Tostig rebelled against him; and joined the King of Norway, who sailed with an army to fight with England. Harold would have forgiven his brother, and bestowed on him lands and honours, but he would not give anything to the King of Norway; and because he would not do so, Tostig would not make peace with Harold.

22. A great battle took place, in which Tostig and the King of Norway were both killed; and an immense number of their soldiers was also slain. Harold entirely defeated them; but a great many of his brave men fell before the victory was won. Only three days afterwards, the Normans landed near Hastings, in Sussex.

23. The size of Harold's army was sadly lessened, when he marched to meet William. His brother Gurth, who loved him greatly, begged him to go away and not take part in the fight. Gurth said that all other men in England were right in opposing the Normans who came to rob them of their country; but that Harold ought not to fight because of his oath. Harold replied that he could not let his friends go into danger which he himself dared not face.

24. The night before the battle was spent by the

English army in songs and feasting; by the Normans, in religious services. On the morning of Saturday, 14th of October, the fight began. Soon, many thousands lay dead upon the field. The conflict raged hour after hour, and at last Harold was mortally wounded. He had shown great courage, and when he fell his brothers defended his flag. The battle lasted all day, but at length the brave Saxons were defeated, and when night put an end to the slaughter, William and the Normans were masters of England.

25. At least, they thought themselves so; but you will see that they had to fight a long time before the whole country submitted to them; though they had won the day at Hastings. It has been said of this battle, that it was "the most memorable of all others; howsoever miserably lost, yet most nobly fought on the part of England."

26. I have told you how the Saxons conquered England, and how the Danes came to intefere with them. After long fighting, they had shared the land between them, and were united under the common name of English. Now, the Normans conquered them, and for very many years treated them cruelly and unjustly; but at last, Normans, Saxons and Danes mixed together, and living in peace, formed one nation—the English nation to which you and I have the happiness to belong.

27. With the Norman conquest in 1066, ended the dominion of the Saxons, who had ruled over England for several hundred years. And this will be a suitable place to give a little account of their cus-

toms and manner of life, which we will do in the next chapter.

1. Name the Danish kings.
2. What Saxon king succeeded them?
3. What were his claims to the crown?
4. What people did he like better than his own?
5. Name the two persons who claimed the throne on his death?
6. What great battle did they fight, and who won it?

CHAPTER VI.

Saxon Customs.

1. We will speak first of the Saxon mode of Government. They had a king, and a sort of council or parliament, called the Wittenagemot, consisting of nobles and others. Among the Saxons, the people were divided into different classes. First, came the king and his family; next, the nobles, who bore the names of earls, counts, or thanes, and who possessed nearly all the money, and land, and power in the kingdom, except what belonged to the king and the clergy. The greater part of the poor people were called villains. The life of one earl was considered worth that of six villains.

2. These villains were tenants and servants of the nobles, and were not entirely free. The nobles, on whose land they lived, could not sell or give them away; but if the land was sold then the villains went with it. They could not be separated from it. Their masters could not send them away if they wished to do so. They were allowed to buy their own freedom, and that of their families.

3. The last class was that of the slaves; some of whom were descended from the ancient Britons, but most of them were made slaves for some crime they had committed. They had no rights or privileges, and were not counted as part of the people. They were obliged to do what their masters told them; and were allowed to have no will of their own.

4. In the Anglo-Saxon times if a person robbed another, or injured him in any way, he was generally made to pay a sum of money to the man he wronged, and perhaps a fine to the king as well. Thus, if any one hurt another's leg he had to pay fifty shillings; if he hurt some one's little finger he had to pay eleven shillings, and so on, more or less, according to the part of the body he had injured. The sums of money here mentioned were of much greater value then than they are now.

5. Besides this punishment, criminals were sometimes hung, or banished, or imprisoned. Sometimes they were stoned, or had their eyes put out, or a leg or arm cut off, for such cruel punishments were often inflicted in rude, barbarous times. Occasionally, when a person had done anything wicked, he was made an outlaw, that is deprived of the care of the law, and any one who met him might kill him.

6. One strange custom among the Anglo-Saxons was what was called trial by ordeal. If a man were accused of some crime, and swore to his innocence, but it could not be proved, then he was tried by ordeal; that is, he was told to put his hand into boiling water, or to hold a piece of red-hot iron; and if at the end of three days his hand had no mark of burning on it,

they believed him innocent; but they thought that if he were guilty his hand would be burnt.

7. The houses of the Anglo-Saxons were commonly built of wood; but many of the powerful nobles lived in great castles, which were very strong. They did not paper walls then; but rich people had their walls hung with embroidered silk, called tapestry, worked by the ladies. Some of their chairs and beds were handsomely carved; and they occasionally had golden cups to drink from. They often made a drinking cup of a cow's horn, which was ornamented with silver.

8. Those who could afford it had four meals a-day. Their principal food was meat, which was then cheaper than any other; but it was not so good as what we have now. The servants used to bring the meat into the dining-hall, on spits, which they held while the gentlemen cut off what they wanted. Rich people used wine sometimes, but the commonest drinks were ale, and a fermented liquor made of honey-water, called mead. I am sorry to say that they used to drink a great deal, and were often intoxicated. They were very fond of bathing in warm baths.

9. The dress of the men was generally a shirt and drawers, made of linen, and a loose dress, or sort of frock, reaching to the knees, and fastened by a girdle round the waist; this dress was called a tunic, and when worn by the nobles was handsomely ornamented. Gentlemen generally wore stockings; the poor commonly did not. A short cloak was often put on over the tunic, and pinned with a brooch.

10. The Saxon women wore a long dress, with tight sleeves, and over it a full garment, often trimmed and embroidered, and with short, loose sleeves. They sometimes had a cloak or mantle also. A kind of veil, made of silk or linen, was folded round their heads and necks. The nobles, both men and women, had rings and bracelets, and many other ornaments made of jewels; and used silk, and cloth worked with gold and silver thread, for their dresses.

11. The ladies took much trouble with their hair, though their veils must have greatly hidden it. The hair of the men was allowed to grow long, and hang over their shoulders, for the Saxons were proud of their flowing locks; and their beards also were of considerable length. The colour of their hair was generally light and flaxen, and their eyes blue.

12. In those warlike times the nobles were very often engaged in fighting. When they were at home, one of their favorite amusements was hunting the wild boar and the wild deer through the thick woods. People could not shoot then, because there were no guns; but the Saxons were very fond of hawking. They used to train hawks and falcons for this purpose.

13. Gentlemen, and sometimes ladies too, would go out on horseback, with their hawks perched on their wrists, and then would send them up into the air to catch smaller birds for them. In their houses they sometimes amused themselves with chess and back-gammon, games which are common among us now. They were fond of wrestling, and other exercises in which strength was exerted.

14. Most of the villains were employed in farm

work; in sowing, ploughing, and reaping corn, and in taking care of the horses, cows, sheep and pigs. But they did not understand so well as we do now how to manage these animals; and great numbers of them died every winter. At one time, it was necessary always to watch the sheep, lest they should be carried off by wolves.

15. I have spoken of the scarcity of education among them; how almost all the learning was confined to the monks, and there were no books but what were written out by the hand. Many noblemen could not read, and sometimes kings could not write their own names. The great Alfred encouraged schools, and numbers of the nobles learnt to read and write; but the poor people were, for the most part, utterly ignorant.

16. The Saxons were very fond of music; and when they met to feast, would often sing and play on the harp. They had several musical instruments. Men used to go about the country singing, and in ballads both Danes and Saxons delighted. Canute himself wrote some. The poor people used to hear these ballads sung, and soon got to know them by heart, and so they could enjoy them while they were working in the fields by day, or sitting by their wood fires at night, although they could not read.

17. While nations are rude and half-civilized, we often find that women are despised and oppressed; but it was not so among the Saxons and the Danes. They treated their women with respect. The ladies, even those who belonged to the royal family, used to employ themselves in spinning clothes, and in working with

the needle; they embroidered dresses, and worked hangings for the walls, and for churches.

1. Name the three governing classes?
2. What were the poor people called?
3. What was the class below the villains?
4. Name the different kinds of punishments?
5. What was the chief food of the Saxons?
6. What was their chief amusement?

THE NORMAN LINE.

CHAPTER VII.

WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR (1066—1087).

1. As soon as it was known that Harold was killed, Edgar Atheling, the grandson of Edmund Ironside, was declared king in London; but very soon the Saxons felt that it was impossible to resist William, and he was crowned in Westminster Abbey on the 25th of December. At first he treated the Saxons kindly, though he made the Norman nobles masters of all the chief castles and towns, and gave them all the lands in his power; so that the Saxons felt every day that they were conquered, and that the country was no longer their own.

2. You may imagine how angry and unhappy they were; and when William went to visit Normandy, they were so oppressed by those he left behind him that they began to talk among themselves of murdering all the Normans, as the Danes had been murdered many years before; and by this dreadful act to make themselves free.

3. When William heard of the state of things in England, he quickly returned. The inhabitants of Devon and Cornwall gallantly resisted him, but William forced them to give up Exeter, and he treated the citizens mercifully. Then he marched to

the midland counties, and though the Saxons fought bravely, he was too strong for them. He took possession of York, and then went southwards, to put down a rising there.

4. The Saxons were by no means conquered yet. A great many of them took their wives and children and went into the deep woods, and lived there, because they would not submit to the tyranny of the Normans. But William met with the greatest resistance in the north of England,—in Northumbria, beyond the Humber, where the inhabitants were in great part descended from the Danes. They now rose against William, and after taking Durham and killing the Norman nobleman who commanded there, and 900 of his men, they went to attack York.

5. The Northumbrians had asked the King of Denmark to help them, and he sent several vessels full of soldiers to them, and the King of Scotland also came with an army to their assistance, bringing with him the Saxon prince, Edgar Atheling. These different bodies of troops joined together and besieged York.

6. The Saxon archbishop, Aldred, who had crowned William, was in the city, with the Normans. He was broken-hearted now at the misery brought on England and himself by the Conqueror; and he prayed that he might die before the Northumbrians entered York; and so he did. The city was strong, and for seven days the Normans refused to yield. On the eighth day, they set fire to some houses near the walls, fearing they would fall into the hands of their enemies.

7. The wind was high, and the fire spread. It could not be stopped, and the unfortunate Normans saw that if they stayed in the castle they should be burnt to death, so, like brave men, though they were only three hundred in number, they went out with their swords in their hands, to meet their foes. The Normans were soon surrounded on every side, and nearly all were killed.

8. The Danes would not stay any longer, and the inhabitants of Northumbria were left alone; while William, vowing vengeance, marched into the North. His path was marked with fire and blood. He made the country between York and Durham a vast wilderness. Not a single inhabited village was left. The houses and crops were burnt, and the cattle driven away by the Normans.

9. No wild beast could have ravaged the country more cruelly and fiercely than this Conqueror did. It is said that one hundred thousand persons perished. The dead lay by the way-side, for there were none to bury them. Women, and little children, as well as men, were killed. There was more misery than I can describe—more than you can imagine.

10. You will believe that the Saxons only hated William the more for such horrible deeds as these; but whenever they resisted he crushed them to the earth, and took away their lands, and gave them to fierce Norman nobles, who treated the poor Saxons very ill; but there was one good Norman nobleman who refused to accept any English land or treasure from the Conqueror.

11. His name was Guilbert, and he said he did

not want what was stolen from other people; that he had fought for William, who was his master, and now he would go to Normandy, live on his own property, and not meddle with what belonged to others. Guilbert was a wise and good man; he felt how far better it was to do without riches than gain them unjustly.

12. The terrible slaughter in the north of England did not discourage a brave Saxon noble, named Hereward, from raising an army, and going with his soldiers to the Isle of Ely, in Cambridgeshire, which was surrounded by fens; that is marshy land, which made it difficult for persons to get there. Hereward and his men used to come out from these fens and attack the Normans, and sometimes defeat them.

13. William built a sort of wooden bridge, or causeway, for his troops to cross the marshes and reach Hereward's camp, but the Saxons burnt it down. There were many Saxon monks living near, some of whom helped Hereward as much as they could, but others grew tired, and were so mean and cowardly as to show William the way to the camp of the Saxons, whom he then made prisoners.

14. You will be glad to hear that the Conqueror so respected Hereward's bravery that he set the Saxon noble free, and gave all his lands back to him again; while the wretched monks who had betrayed Hereward were punished by being made to support the Norman soldiers they had invited to come there.

15. It was only by degrees that William subdued England. It was seven years after the battle of Hastings before his wars with the Saxons were ended; and though he was very clever and very

courageous, he was a harsh and cruel ruler, as you have seen; and he let some of the Norman nobles treat the poor people with the greatest barbarity; and to make deer-parks he would pull down houses and churches without scruple. "Rich men bemoaned it, and poor men shuddered at it. But he was so stern that he recked not the hatred of them all."

16. Because he was so fond of hunting, he resolved to have another forest in Hampshire, where he might chase the deer; so he destroyed a great many churches, and also whole villages, and drove away the poor people who lived in them. But this New Forest, which was obtained by such ruthless cruelty, brought woe into the Conqueror's family; for two of his sons and one grandson there met with a sudden and violent death.

17. William had promised, that after his death, his eldest son, Duke Robert, should have Normandy. But Robert chose to have it at once, and when his father refused, he was very angry, and leaving England, went over to Normandy, where bad men encouraged him in his anger, and for some years a war was carried on between the Conqueror and his son. Was not this dreadful?

18. I will tell you how it was ended at last. In one battle, Robert, not knowing his father, whose face was covered with a helmet, fought with him, and was just going to kill him, when the king called out for help, and when Robert heard his voice he knew who it was.

19. Robert was very much shocked when he found that he had nearly killed his own father, and threw

himself at the king's feet and implored forgiveness, which, at that time, William was too angry to grant, though Robert gave up his own horse to his father, and saw him out of danger. Afterwards the Conqueror relented, and they were reconciled. But the end of William's life and reign was near.

20. He quarrelled with the King of France, and went over to France to fight him, and there he met with an accident which caused his death. When he was dying, he thought of all his cruelties, and the remembrance troubled him. So he ordered that those he had kept in prison should be set at liberty, and he left money to churches and to monasteries, which you know were houses where a great many monks lived together. But he could not undo all the suffering he had caused.

21. In his will, he left England to his son, William Rufus; and Normandy to his son Robert. William Rufus and Henry were present when he died. But when these heartless sons had heard his will, they thought no more of their dead father, but hastened away. The nobles and priests who had stood around the Conqueror's death-bed also went to their own houses. The servants stole everything they could lay their hands on, and then ran off. So there he lay in death, alone.

22. At length, some of the clergy came to pray beside him, but no son or other relation was there, to give directions about his funeral, and it is said that one knight paid the expenses of it. He was not even laid in the grave peacefully. While the Bishop of Evreux was performing the service, a man suddenly

rose up, and said that the very ground on which they stood had been violently and unjustly taken from his father by the Conqueror. "I reclaim it as my right," he said, "and, in the name of God, I forbid you to bury him here." The bishop at once paid the man his price, and then went on with the king's burial.

23. Before I close this chapter, I must tell you something about the feudal system, which William the Conqueror firmly established in England, and which at that time existed, more or less, in all the countries of Europe. I will try to explain to you what is meant by the feudal system. When William conquered England, he gave the land in large portions to the great Norman nobles. In return, they were bound to assist the king in his wars, and were called his vassals.

24. These powerful nobles built strong castles on their lands, in which they lived in style, with great numbers of servants and followers. The working people, or villains, used to have their poor cottages near their master's castle, and cultivate his fields, and take care of his cattle. The noble was like a king among them.

25. Sometimes these great nobles or barons granted part of their land to poorer nobles, who were bound to help them in their quarrels just as the great nobles were bound to aid the king. When the king summoned them to go to battle with him, they would come all dressed in armour, with flags flying, and followed by many hundreds of men who lived on their estates, and came at their bidding.

26. It cannot be said that the poor people were free under the feudal system. If their master chose

to fight, they must help him; if he sold any of his land, the workmen who lived on it had to go with it to the buyer. But poor people were often badly off in those days.

27. You may sometimes read of Domesday Book, which is a most valuable record, written by command of the Conqueror, giving an account of the different estates in the kingdom, to whom they belonged, and what sort of land they contained.

28. And now we have done with the reign of William I. You have seen how harsh and pitiless, and very cruel, he sometimes was. Yet he tried to have the laws executed justly, and he severely punished those who committed robbery, murder, and other crimes; for he was not altogether bad; he had some good and some great qualities; but he lived in rude and savage times, when there was much darkness and ignorance. And let us remember one thing. If we who know much better than he had the means of doing, are selfish, and unkind, and oppress the weak, we shall be worse than William the Conqueror.

1. Where did William meet with most resistance?
2. How many years did he fight with the Saxons?
3. How did he make the New Forest?
4. Why did Duke Robert rebel?
5. Where did William die?
6. What was that system called which united the king and his vassals?

CHAPTER VIII.

William Rufus. (1087—1100.)

1. William, called Rufus, which means red, on account of his red hair or his ruddy face, was crowned King of England in the year 1087. But many of the barons wished that his brother Robert should be king, and in consequence of this a war broke out. You have seen that the Saxons had little cause to love the Normans, but now William Rufus wanted the Saxons to help him, so he promised that if they would fight for him he would treat them better than his father had done.

2. He soon defeated his enemies, but he did not keep his fine promises to the Saxons, though from that time their position began to improve. He was a selfish and oppressive king, and did not care how much his people suffered so long as he could amuse himself, and force from them all the money he possibly could to squander on his pleasures.

3. He endeavoured to take possession of Normandy, and landed there with an army. Robert and he were on the point of fighting, when the powerful barons, who had seen enough of war, persuaded them to settle their dispute peaceably. Then Robert and William Rufus united their armies, and went to fight with their younger brother Henry.

4. Henry shut himself up with his soldiers in the castle of St. Michael's Mount, off the coast of France; not the St. Michael's Mount in Cornwall. In this Norman castle he was besieged by his two brothers,

and soon Henry and his men were in great distress for want of water, but Robert helped to supply them with it, and also sent some wine for Henry's use. When the hard-hearted William Rufus advised him not to do so, Robert said, "What, shall I suffer my brother to die of thirst? Where shall we find another when he is gone?"

5. Soon after Henry gave up the castle, and the combat between the brothers was ended. In a little while a conflict began, in which almost all Europe was engaged. I mean the Crusades or Holy Wars, which were undertaken to rescue Jerusalem and other parts of Palestine from the power of the Turks. I will try to explain them to you.

6. It was then the custom to make pilgrimages to Jerusalem to pray beside the tomb of Christ. It was not wise to do this, for God could hear those who prayed to him in England quite as well as if they prayed to him in Jerusalem, for He is everywhere. But most persons then were very ignorant, and you will find that those who are ignorant often act unwisely.

7. Jerusalem at that time belonged to a nation called Turks, for the poor Jews had long before been scattered over the world. The Turks were not Christians but Mahommedans, and they did not like that Christians should come to pray at Jerusalem, and they were often very cruel to the poor pilgrims who had travelled many hundred miles, and endured great hardship to get there.

8. At that time there lived in France a man named Peter, who was a hermit, that is, one who lived all alone in a little cell, spent most of his time in prayer,

wore very coarse clothes, and ate but little food. Some of these hermits were good men, who lived in this way because they thought it was pleasing to God. We may be sure that to do so now would be a great mistake, for Christians ought to live among their fellow-creatures and help them. Our Lord himself when He was on earth did not shut himself up in a cell, but went about doing good.

9. Still, if the hermits were good men, God would certainly accept their devotion, even if it were mistaken. We need not laugh at them, but be thankful that we have been better taught. I believe that Peter the Hermit was a good man. He had made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and was greatly distressed when he saw how badly the pilgrims were used.

10. When Peter returned home, he went to Rome and told the Pope what he had seen. The authority of the Pope was then acknowledged throughout Europe; for at that time all Christians were Roman Catholics. The Pope advised Peter to tell all the powerful kings of what had grieved him so much; and Peter set out on his journey with a bitter remembrance in his heart of the cruelty practised on the poor pilgrims.

11. Travelling was very difficult in those days, for there were no coaches or railways, and the roads were often exceedingly bad; but Peter did not mind trouble. Like all brave men, he was willing to endure pain and weariness. His wish was that a great army should be raised to fight with the Turks, and drive them away from Jerusalem; so he went from place to place, and whenever he could get people to listen to him, in the

halls of the noblemen and the huts of the poor, and by the roadside, he told his tale.

12. Pope Urban II. also urged that a war should be undertaken against the Turks; and in a little while thousands on thousands of people were filled with a burning desire to go and take Jerusalem. Noblemen, peasants, even women and children, resolved to engage in this war. From England and France, and Normandy and Italy, they came in almost countless numbers. Among others, Robert, Duke of Normandy, wished to join the Crusade, but he had not money enough to do so.

13. Then he offered to sell Normandy for five years to his brother William Rufus, and they agreed on this. So Robert and a great many other princes, with an immense army, collected from all parts of Europe, set out for Palestine, or the Holy Land. The crusaders endured great hardships on their way: they had to travel through strange countries, where they were often attacked by the inhabitants, and were frequently in want of food. Many thousands died or were killed, and never reached their journey's end.

14. At last those who survived stood on the shores of the Holy Land; and then began a most terrible war with the Turks. In the end, after desperate fighting and dreadful slaughter, the crusaders took the city of Jerusalem, and one of their chiefs, named Godfrey, a brave, generous, and merciful man, was chosen King of Jerusalem. This event happened in 1099.

15. Soon after this Robert, Duke of Normandy, left Palestine to return to Europe. On his way home he passed through Italy, and there he met with a very

beautiful lady, named Sybilla, whom he married. He remained in Italy for about a year, and while he was enjoying himself there his brother, William Rufus, met with his death in England.

16. You remember how William the Conqueror drove numbers of poor people from their homes, and threw down their cottages, that he might make the New Forest fit to hunt in. His son Richard had already lost his life there, and there a son of Duke Robert's had been killed by accident; and in this same New Forest William Rufus met with a sudden and violent death.

17. One day he went to hunt there, and as the evening came on, he and a gentleman named Sir Walter Tyrrell were alone in some part of the forest. Sir Walter shot an arrow at a stag, and instead of wounding the stag, the arrow glanced against a tree, and bounding back, struck the king and killed him.

18. Sir Walter Tyrell was so alarmed and distressed, that he rode away as fast as he could to the sea-shore, and went abroad to join the Crusades; and a few hours later some country people found William Rufus lying dead on the ground in the New Forest, the third of his race who had perished there.

19. There was a good man, who lived in this reign, of whom I must tell you something, I mean Anselm, the Archbishop of Canterbury. He was very unwilling to be placed in that high office, but when the king insisted on his taking it, he faithfully and fearlessly performed its duties. He was not afraid to reprove William Rufus for his evil conduct; and though he

met with ill treatment, yet the Conqueror and his sons respected his goodness.

1. What were the Crusades, and why undertaken?
2. What monk induced numbers to join them?
3. What city did the Crusaders take?
4. Where was William Rufus killed?
5. How did his death happen?

CHAPTER IX.

HENRY I. (1100—1135).

1. You know that William Rufus had a brother whose name was Henry. He now became King of England by the title of Henry I. He was also called Beauclerc, (fine scholar), on account of his learning. He was hunting in another part of the New Forest, when his brother was killed, and immediately rode off to Winchester to take possession of the royal treasures. William de Breteuil, who had charge of them, and who was a brave and honest man, refused to give them up, because he considered that they belonged to Robert; but Henry drew his sword, and he and his followers took them by force. He was crowned three days after William Rufus's death, in the year 1100.

2. There was then living a lady named Maud, the daughter of the King of Scotland, who was descended from Edward the Confessor. Henry thought that he should like to marry Maud, because she was a Saxon, and he knew that his Saxon subjects would feel her to be one of themselves, and would love her better than a Norman queen: so he asked Maud to be his wife.

3. I believe that Maud did not wish to marry Henry, but she knew that if she did she would unite the Norman and Saxon races, and then she hoped that the Saxons would be better treated, so she consented to become Henry's wife. But she was sadly disappointed, for Henry continued to oppress the Saxons, although he had promised to do differently.

4. The Saxons loved Maud dearly, "Maud the good queen," as they called her, but she could not help them; they and the Normans were still enemies, and as the Normans were the stronger, they ill-treated the Saxons. Long, long ago these differences have been forgotten, and the two races, united into one, form the great English nation; but it took a long time to bring this about.

5. I must now tell you what became of Robert, Duke of Normandy, Henry's elder brother. He was in Italy when their brother died, but he soon hastened back to Normandy. He thought that he ought to be King of England, and landed at Portsmouth with an army; but the brothers made a treaty and settled their dispute without fighting. Robert then went home to Normandy.

6. But he soon got into difficulties. He was a brave and generous man, and more merciful and kind-hearted than his brothers, but he was sadly idle and careless. He was too negligent to be a good ruler; and soon his nobles became much disatisfied with him, and asked Henry to interfere. Henry was pleased at this, for he wanted Normandy for himself. Robert was defeated in the first battle, and then he implored Henry

to remember that they were brothers, and to make peace, but Henry would not listen to him.

7. Therefore another battle took place, in which Robert fought bravely, as he always did, but for the last time, for his troops were routed and he himself taken prisoner and conveyed to England. For 29 years he lived a captive in Cardiff castle, and died when he was an old man of eighty. It has been said, that because he tried to escape, Henry had his eyes put out, but I believe that was not the case, and I am very glad to think that such a dreadful story is not true.

8. Robert's beautiful wife died before his worst troubles began, and was spared the sorrow of witnessing them. He had one little boy, who was only five years old when he was taken prisoner and brought before Henry, and when the poor child saw his uncle he cried bitterly. Henry ordered him to be placed under the care of a Norman lord, named Elie de Saen.

9. This nobleman was a kind, good man. He took care of Robert's son while he was a child, and when he grew older, begged the King of France to protect him, and endeavour to get his father's dominions for him. The French king gave the young prince the title of the Earl of Flanders, and fought with Henry to make him give up Normandy to his nephew, but the poor youth was killed in battle, and so the fighting ended.

10. The good queen Maud died in the year 1118, and two years after perished her only son, Prince William. He did not love his mother's Saxon people, and used to threaten that when he became king he would yoke them like oxen to the plough, but fortunately he never "became king." I must tell you about his death.

11. When he was eighteen, his father took him to Normandy, that the barons there might swear to acknowledge him as their duke.

12. When the time came to return to England the king set sail with a fair wind. Prince William's vessel, the "White Ship," was not quite ready, and did not leave so soon. While they were waiting some of the crew drank too much, so that they were not in a fit state to manage her; but they had no fear, and the "White Ship" sailed proudly out of the harbour with 300 souls on board, among whom were 140 of the young nobility of England and Normandy.

13. But the voyage, joyously begun, was soon woefully ended. It was evening when they left the land, and in the darkness the ship struck on a rock and began to fill with water. Wild cries of terror and distress were heard in the stillness of the night by those on board the king's vessel, but they little guessed from where the mournful sounds came. It was plain that the "White Ship" would go to pieces, and the captain thought only how to save Prince William.

14. A boat was quickly lowered, and the Prince with a few others were put into it, and they were so far safe. But as they were rowing away Prince William heard his half-sister, who had been left in the sinking vessel, calling to him for help. He could not bear to leave her to be lost, so he bade the sailors turn back and save her. It was the best deed of Prince William's of which we know; his last act and his worthiest. When they reached the side of the ship, so many persons sprang into the boat, that it sank and all perished.

15. The vessel also went down, and nearly all the persons in her were drowned directly; but a young nobleman and a butcher supported themselves on a piece of the wreck, and were thus kept from sinking. The captain, too, who was able to swim, also took hold of the same bit of wood, and immediately called out to the butcher, "Where is the prince?" The butcher answered, "He is gone."

16. When the captain heard this he exclaimed, "Woe is me!" and he let go his hold, and was seen no more. The young noble clung to the spar as long as he could, but after several hours he became so cold and tired that his stiffened fingers could no longer support him: so he took leave of the butcher, and sank in the waves. The butcher was seen and saved next morning by some fishermen, the solitary survivor of the 300 who embarked in the "White Ship."

17. When you think of the number of lives lost in this wreck, you may guess what sorrow there was in English and Norman homes. People were afraid to tell the king of his son's death, and when at last he was informed of it, he fainted away, and though he lived many years afterwards, he was never seen to smile again.

18. Henry had one daughter, named Matilda. She first married the Emperor of Germany; and after his death she became the wife of Geoffery Plantagenet, eldest son of the Earl of Anjou. Her father settled the Crown of England on her. In 1135, Henry I. died at the age of 66, having reigned nearly 35 years. He possessed much of the ability of his father, the Conqueror, and so strictly administered the laws that he

was called "the lion of justice." But he was often cruel and faithless.

1. Who did Henry I. marry?
2. What became of Duke Robert?
3. How did Prince William meet with his death?
4. What effect did it have on the king?
5. Who was heir to the crown after Prince William's death?

CHAPTER X.

STEPHEN. (1135—1154).

1. HENRY the First had a nephew, named Stephen, whose mother was a daughter of William the Conqueror. As soon as Henry was dead, Stephen hastened to London, determined to be king if it were possible. One of the royal servants was so wicked as to swear that when Henry was dying he had said that he would rather Stephen should reign than Matilda, which was quite false, for Henry loved Matilda very much.

2. Though Stephen had no claim to the throne he was crowned at Westminister in 1135. Some of the barons took his part. Perhaps in those unsettled times they thought it better to have a man to govern them than a woman. But many noblemen promised to help Matilda. Then there was dreadful fighting; and the country was filled with bloodshed and confusion.

3. The houses and the crops were often destroyed. It was said that a person might go a day's journey without seeing a single man, or an acre of tilled land. Every one belonged to Matilda's party or to Stephen's. Sometimes the members of one family took different sides, and brothers fought against brothers, and fathers against their sons. This was a civil war, that is, a war

between people of the same country; and of all war civil war is the most terrible.

4. David, King of Scotland, who was Matilda's uncle, led an army into England to assist her. A terrible engagement, called the Battle of the Standard, took place near Northallerton, and Stephen gained the victory. But Matilda was resolved to make another effort to recover her crown. Several more battles were fought, in which Matilda's troops were commanded by her half-brother, Robert, Earl of Gloucester, her truest and ablest friend. At last, in 1141, Stephen was defeated and taken prisoner, and then Matilda was proclaimed queen. The citizens of London received her joyfully, and begged her to do away with some of the harsh Norman laws, and restore those of Edward the Confessor. The queen was highly displeased at this request, and made the citizens so angry by her conduct that they began to think of putting her in prison.

5. When Matilda heard this, she secretly left London, by night, and fled to Oxford, where her army joined her. The inhabitants of London united themselves to Stephen's party, and by the help of the the Londoners, Matilda's troops were completely routed, and the Earl of Gloucester was made prisoner by Stephen's soldiers. Matilda could not get on at all without him; and the only way in which she could obtain his release was to liberate Stephen, and exchange him for the Earl. This arrangement was made, and Stephen and the Earl of Gloucester were both free again.

6. The fighting still went on. In 1142 the queen was besieged in Oxford, and wanted to escape. It was winter, and the ground was covered with snow. Matilda and her attendants dressed themselves in white,

and then, as their clothes were the same colour as the earth, they escaped without being seen by their enemies who surrounded the city.

7. In 1147, the queen left England, and returned to Normandy. About this time her faithful friend the Earl of Gloucester died, and two years of peace followed. Meanwhile, Matilda's son, Henry Plantagenet was growing up to be a man, and he resolved to go to England and fight against Stephen. The two armies came in sight of each other at Wallingford. But the barons on both sides were weary of the horrible war which had raged for many years, and they endeavoured to make peace.

8. One nobleman, the Earl of Arundel, was wise enough and bold enough to say "that it was not reasonable to prolong the calamities of a whole nation on account of the ambition of two princes." And then the war was ended by an agreement that Stephen should be king as long as he lived, and that when he died Henry should be his successor.

9. In the following year, Stephen's stormy reign was ended by his death in 1154. He was brave, generous, and, considering the times in which he lived, sometimes merciful; but the strife of which he was the cause covered the land with misery and woe. An old writer who lived in those days, says—"To till the ground was to plough the sea; the earth bare no corn, for the land was all laid waste by such deeds; and men said openly that Christ slept and his saints."

1. Who disputed Matilda's claim?
2. What king helped her.
3. Who was her best friend?
4. What was her son's name?
5. By what agreement was the Civil War ended?

Period the Second.

THE PLANTAGENET LINE

(1154—1485.)

THE PLANTAGENET LINE.

Henry II.	1154—1189
Richard I.	1189—1199
John	1199—1216
Henry III.	1216—1272
Edward I.	1272—1307
Edward II.	1307—1327
Edward III.	1327—1377
Richard II.	1377—1399

(*House of Lancaster.*)

Henry IV.	1399—1413
Henry V.	1413—1422
Henry VI.	1422—1461

(*House of York.*)

Edward IV.	1461—1483
Edward V.	1483—1483
Richard III.	1483—1485

CHAPTER XI.

HENRY II. (1154—1189).

1. HENRY PLANTAGENET became King of England in 1154, by the title of Henry II. A large portion of France belonged to him, for beside the extensive provinces there which he inherited from his parents, he had married a French wife, and received great possessions with her. Her name was Eleanor, and she was not at all a good woman. Her first husband was the King of France, who divorced her, and six weeks afterwards Henry wedded her and her broad lands, and bitterly he paid for this foolish and wrong act.

2. Henry II. began his reign very wisely. He destroyed some of the strong castles which had been built for fighting purposes; and he sent away all the foreign soldiers that Stephen had brought to England. He was soon engaged in wars with France, of which I need not tell you any particulars, but will relate what happened at hòme.

3. There was then living in England a very extraordinary man, called Thomas à Becket, of whom I must give you an account. His father, whose name was Gilbert à Becket, was a citizen of London. When Gilbert was a young man he went to the Holy Land to fight in the Crusades, and there he was taken prisoner by a Saracen or Arab chief.

4. This Saracen chief had a daughter who used often to talk to Gilbert à Becket, and at last they got to love each other, and resolved to fly together to

England. I do not know how it happened that Gilbert escaped without her, but she determined to follow him. The only two English words she knew were *London* and *Gilbert*; besides travelling alone was difficult and dangerous in those days, but her love made her brave.

5. The only way in which she could make people understand where she wanted to go, was by constantly repeating the word *London*, and by this means she at length reached the city. Then she walked about London saying *Gilbert*, until she was seen by a servant of Gilbert's who had been with him in the Holy Land, and who took her to his master. Then she was baptized by the name of Matilda, and she and Gilbert were married.

6. Thomas à Becket was their son, and he was very handsome, clever, and learned, when he grew up to be a man. Henry II. soon noticed him, and made him a Minister of State. Becket was the first Saxon who had risen to so high an office since the Norman Conquest. He lived in great style, and had a grand house, or what was then considered so.

7. There were no carpets in England then; and how do you suppose that Becket covered the floors of his fine rooms? In summer they were strewn with green rushes and boughs, and in winter with clean straw or hay. When he had a great many visitors, and there was not room for all at the table, some of the gentlemen used to sit on the floor.

8. Becket became a great favourite with the king, who at last made him Archbishop of Canterbury. When Becket was appointed to this office, he at once changed his manner of life. He sent away his splendid train of attendants, gave up his rich

dress, and wore coarse clothes, and lived on bread and water.

9. Now the king's object in making Becket archbishop was to have a helper in keeping order amongst the clergy, some of whom were rebellious and ill-behaved. These men refused to submit to the laws, because they were priests, and when any of them committed crimes, they escaped without punishment, because they were clergymen.

10. Of course this state of things was very wrong. When the priests were bad men, it was right that they should be turned out of their office, for bad men could not be fit to teach religion to others; and if priests were guilty of crimes, it was right that they should be punished like other people. But the clergy were jealous of the king's interfering with church matters; and a long and disgraceful quarrel arose between him and them, in which both parties were to blame.

11. The clergy wished that the church should be above the king and the laws; the king wished that the church should submit to him in everything. It was well that neither was gratified. When Becket was made archbishop, he at once resolved to protect the church against Henry, who became very angry with him. After a while, Becket fled from England and took refuge in France. The king said he would allow Becket to return home if he would behave properly, but the archbishop was very insolent, and they still remained enemies.

12. Now the Pope of Rome, who was in those days the head of the church, approved of Becket's

conduct, and gave him leave to lay a large portion of the kingdom of England under an interdict. I must explain to you what is meant by an interdict.

13. At that time all persons who professed the Christian religion were Roman Catholics, and acknowledged the authority of the pope. Sometimes when he was very much displeased with a nation, he would order all the churches in a country to be closed, and forbid the priests to perform any religious service. This was called laying a kingdom under an interdict.

14. The pope and Becket tried this plan in a part of England, but Henry II. did not care for that. In a little while Becket became more reasonable, and then the king said he might return. Becket came back to England in triumph, and was warmly welcomed by many persons. But he soon began again to act in a very provoking manner, and the king felt very much insulted by his conduct.

15. One day when Henry was feeling exceedingly indignant at some of Becket's acts, he exclaimed, "To what a miserable state am I reduced, when I cannot be at rest in my own realm, by reason of only one priest; there is no one to deliver me out of my troubles." Several gentlemen heard the king say this, and they thought that he would be glad if Becket were dead, and four of them resolved to go to Canterbury and kill the archbishop.

16. These four knights went first to Becket's house, and ordered him to take an oath that he would submit to the king. Becket refused. Then they left him, but though he knew that they intended to kill him, he did not try to escape, and when the time

came for the evening service he went to the cathedral to perform it as usual. This was his duty and he scorned to fly.

17. He had not been long in the church before the four knights, followed by some soldiers, rushed in with their swords in their hands. One of them, named Tracy, called out, "Where is the traitor? Where is the archbishop?" Becket, who stood before the altar, replied, "Here am I, *no* traitor, but the archbishop." Tracy caught him by the sleeve, crying, "Come hither—thou art a prisoner."

18. Becket drew away his arm so violently as to make Tracy stagger, and exclaimed, "What meaneth this, William? I have done *thee* many pleasures. Comest thou with armed men into my church?" Then another of the knights cried out that the archbishop should not live any longer. Becket bravely answered, "I am ready to die for my God in defence of the liberties of the church."

19. Just as Becket said these words, he caught hold of Tracy and nearly threw him on the floor, as if to shew that he could fight if he thought it becoming his office. Then bowing his head, as if in prayer, he said, "To God and St. Mary I commend my soul and the cause of the church." He spoke no more, for the knights rushed on him and attacked him with their weapons, and in a few minutes he lay dead on the floor of the cathedral.

20. Such was the end of Becket's strange life. He was a very clever and courageous man, and also he was very proud, overbearing, and ambitious. The king had many reasons for being greatly offended

with him; though Becket no doubt believed that he was doing good to the kingdom in trying to make the church very powerful. You must think it extraordinary that knights and gentlemen should have murdered him. But those were stormy and unsettled times. There was generally fighting somewhere. All gentlemen were armed, and often decided their quarrels with their swords; so that people did not think so much of killing a man as we do.

21. The knights by whom Becket was slain went on a pilgrimage to the Holy Land, to atone for their crime. Henry was greatly troubled about the murder, and foreign kings condemned it. The pope was exceedingly angry, but at last he and the king made up their quarrel, and Henry did penance at Becket's tomb.

22. The next remarkable event of which I shall tell you, was the conquest of Ireland in 1172. Up to this time, England and Ireland had been quite separate from each other. Ireland was then divided into five kingdoms, each governed by a chief of its own. Henry much wished to interfere with them, and he soon found the opportunity he desired.

23. One of the Irish kings, named Dermot, was driven from his kingdom by a neighbouring chief, and Dermot begged Henry's help to conquer his enemy. Henry consented, but he was too busy to go to Ireland himself, and one of his powerful nobles, Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, offered his services, on condition that he should be allowed to marry Dermot's daughter Eva, and become king when Dermot died.

24. Strongbow therefore went to Ireland, and fought against Dermot's enemies, and after one great victory he and the beautiful Eva were married on the field of battle. Strongbow gained many other successes after this, and at last Henry began to feel jealous, and went over to Ireland himself. He required the Irish princes to acknowledge him as their lord, and from that time Ireland has belonged to England.

25. Still it was but a very small part of the Island that Henry II. really ruled. Of course the Irish did not like being conquered, and for many hundred years they often had disputes and fightings with the English, and complained bitterly, and with good reason, of being treated with oppression and injustice. But now that England treats Ireland justly, we hope that disagreements between them are nearly at an end.

26. But while Henry was successful abroad, bitter trials were brewing for him at home. He had new enemies to contend with, and these enemies were his own children—war between a father and his sons—was not this horrible? You will wonder that the young princes could act so wickedly as to fight against their father; and I think we must trace some of their evil conduct to a bad example in a miserable home.

27. You remember that Henry had married a worthless French princess, named Eleanor, for the sake of her great possessions. They had never lived happily together. Henry was not at all a good husband, and Eleanor was furious at his misconduct towards her. The children's love and respect for their parents were doubtless early weakened by the quarrels and wretchedness they witnessed in their

home, and as they grew up they were ripe for rebellion.

28. It was when Henry had subdued his foes at home and abroad that this worst trouble of his life came upon him. He had four sons, and at this time, the eldest, Henry Courtmantle, was eighteen. Richard was sixteen, Geoffrey was fifteen, and John was only five years old. The three elder princes all rebelled against their father; the King of France encouraged them; and what was ten times worse, their evil mother urged them on. Henry was not only angry, but greatly distressed, for he loved his sons in spite of all their misconduct.

29. Henry Courtmantle had been already crowned, and the King of France wickedly advised him to insist on governing some portion of Henry's dominions. Henry refused this demand, and then the young prince raised an army; his brothers Richard and Geoffrey joined him, and thus arose the war between them and their father. It lasted for two years, and was carried on in Henry's French provinces. The King of Scotland, as well as the King of France, gave help to these rebellious sons.

30. When at last this cruel war was over, Henry freely forgave his sons, and then the princes quarrelled among themselves, and began to fight with one another. Their dispute was soon settled by the death of Henry Courtmantle, the eldest brother. He died overwhelmed with remorse, bitterly repenting his unnatural conduct. Some years later, Geoffrey died, leaving two little children, named Arthur and Eleanor, of whom we shall hear again.

31. Henry's last years were rendered miserable by the rebellious behaviour of his son Richard; and when the king found that his youngest and favourite son John had deserted him, his heart seemed broken. He turned his face to the wall and said—"Now then let all things go as they may—I no longer care for myself or for the world!" He refused all comfort, and died in bitterness and sorrow. It was in 1189, that Henry the Second's long troubled reign ended, when he was fifty-six years of age. Richard was present at his father's funeral, and shed many tears of grief and remorse—but too late.

32. By this time the Normans had ceased to oppress the Saxons, and the Saxons had ceased to hate the Normans. They had mixed together, and there were often marriages between them; they had come to feel that they were one people, owning one country. The name of Norman and the name of Saxon were now lost in the noble title of Englishman.

33. The style of dress in the reign of Henry II. was handsome. Gentlemen wore moderately long robes, with a rich girdle round the waist, and mantles fastened on the breast or shoulder. Their boots and shoes were sometimes adorned with splendid embroidery-work, and their gloves were jewelled. The ladies also wore robes which had long tight sleeves, elegant mantles, and they had their hair almost covered.

34. The style of living was still rude in some respects. Grand dinners were laid out in the houses of noblemen, on dishes of gold and silver; but forks were not yet in use. In splendid castles there were no carpets on the floors, but straw or rushes, and the best

beds were made of straw or rugs, spread on benches or on the floors.

1. Who were Thomas à Becket's parents?
2. To what office in the church did the king appoint him?
3. How did Becket lose his life?
4. What country did Henry conquer?
5. How did his sons cause him great distress?
6. Give some idea of the style of living in those times?

CHAPTER XII.

RICHARD I. (1189—1199).

1. RICHARD I. now became king in 1189. They called him the lion-hearted, because of his reckless bravery in battle. Though King of England, he spent very little of his time in his own country, for he was nearly always fighting somewhere. Soon after he had been crowned, he joined the Crusades; but a terrible circumstance marked the beginning of his reign, of which I must give you an account. It concerns the poor Jews who had long lost their own land of Palestine, and were dispersed over the world.

2. Everywhere they were oppressed and plundered, and looked on with scorn. There were many Jews in England, but on Richard's coronation day, they were forbidden to be present in Westminster Hall. Now some of them were anxious to go there, in order to offer gifts to the king, and ask him to protect them.

3. A few of them, laden with presents, forced their way into the hall, where a great number of Englishmen were assembled to witness the crowning of the new king. When they saw the Jews they fell upon them,

robbed them of the treasures they were carrying, beat them, and drove them away. Then some persons were so wicked as to say that the king had commanded the Jews to be put to death. This was not the truth, but many believed it.

4. The poor Jews were then brutally attacked, and numbers of them were murdered—not only men but also women and little children, and their houses were burnt down. Nor was it only in London that they were barbarously treated. At York they took refuge in the castle, and kept it for many days, though their enemies made furious efforts to force an entrance. But at last the Jews saw that they could not hold out much longer.

5. They knew that if they were taken prisoners they would all be murdered, so one night the Jewish rabbi called the other Jews around him, and he said, "Men of Israel, God commands us to die for His law, as our glorious forefathers have done in all ages. If we fall into the hands of our enemies they may cruelly torment us. That life which our Creator gave us, let us return to Him willingly and devoutly with our own hands."

6. Nearly all agreed with what the rabbi said. They burned their rich dresses, and destroyed their jewels. They set the castle on fire, and then the men first killed their wives, and afterwards slew themselves. It is terrible to think of the sufferings of the unhappy Jews, and it is very sad to know that their persecutors called themselves followers of Christ.

7. It was about a year after his coronation that Richard left England to join the Crusades, or holy

wars, which you know were undertaken to get possession of Christ's sepulchre in Jerusalem, which was still in the hands of Turks. The King of France, and Leopold, Duke of Austria, united their troops to Richard's, so that they had a very large army. On his way to Palestine, Richard married a beautiful princess, named Berengaria; but I believe that she never saw her husband's fair land of England.

8. When the English and French monarchs reached the East, they attacked the town of Acre, and took it after a most awful loss of life. Soon the King of France returned home, promising that he would not meddle with Richard's dominions, while the English king was away. Leopold, Duke of Austria, remained with Richard, but in a little while they quarrelled.

9. The cause of their quarrel was this:—the soldiers were very busy rebuilding the wall of a city which they had taken, and gentlemen, and even the king, were helping in the work. Leopold refused his aid, saying, "My father was not a mason, and I was not bred a carpenter."

10. Richard was exceedingly angry at the duke's speech, and, it is said, gave him a kick. This made Leopold furious, but I do not know that he showed his displeasure much at the time, for he was afraid of Richard; but he never forgot the insult, though instead of openly resenting it, he took a mean revenge afterwards, as you will see.

11. Many terrible battles were fought between Richard and Saladin, the chief who then ruled the Turks and Arabs. At last they agreed to a treaty. Saladin promising to allow the Christians to visit

the sacred tomb. But the lion-hearted king was not able to go to Jerusalem himself, because he was ill, and he wept for sorrow to think that he must go home without looking on the Holy City. For, as he was much wanted in England, he was forced to return at once.

12. Soon after peace was made, Saladin died. He was a noble-hearted, upright man, and a generous enemy. It is said that once when Richard was ill of a fever, he supplied the English king with fruit, and thus tried to save the life of his foe. Saladin had begun life as a common soldier, but had become a mighty king. When he was dying he said to his standard-bearer, "Go, show this flag of the dead to the army, and tell them that the Lord of the East could bring nothing but a single garment to the grave."

13. Saladin was not a Christian. He was a Mahommedan, that is a follower of Mahommed, who lived about 600 years after Christ. Mahommedans believe in God, but they look on Mahommed as their Saviour, and use as their Bible a book he wrote, called the Koran.

14. But though Saladin was ignorant of the Christian Bible of which his enemies had heard something, yet he acted far more like a Christian than many of them did. A great number of the people who live in Asia are Mahommedans to this day. Nearly all the Turks and Arabs are of this religion.

15. But it is time to tell you of King Richard's journey home, which was a much longer one than he

intended it to be. On his way he was shipwrecked, and having lost his vessels he was compelled to travel by land. He had to pass through the dominions of Leopold of Austria, with whom he had had that strange quarrel in Palestine.

16. He thought that if Leopold knew of his misfortune he would make him prisoner, and therefore Richard tried to remain unknown. For three days and nights he rode on horseback, accompanied only by his servants, and with scarcely any food. At last, hunger forced him to stop near the city of Vienna.

17. Here he staid for some time, and kept himself out of sight, but he used daily to send one of his attendants into the city to buy provisions. One day, this servant carelessly went to market with the king's gloves hanging from his belt. These gloves were very handsome, and an Austrian officer who had fought in the Crusades as soon as he saw them knew that they belonged to King Richard.

18. When Leopold heard of this, like a coward he resolved to take his revenge when his enemy could not defend himself. So he seized Richard and put him in prison. Meanwhile the people of England could not tell what had become of their king. Now Richard had in his own kingdom a minstrel, that is, a man who played music. His name was Blondel, and he determined to go abroad and see if he could find his master.

19. Whenever he came to a strong castle, Blondel used to sit down and play and sing the king's favourite tune; for he knew that if Richard was imprisoned within, he would hear and answer. So

the faithful minstrel wandered on till he came to a castle called Trifels, and when he had played his tune there, he was rejoiced to hear the king's voice singing it inside the strong walls. Then Blondel went back to England, and told where Richard was imprisoned.

20. The English then endeavoured to obtain the freedom of their king. At last his liberty was promised, if they would pay a large sum of money as a ransom. The English agreed to do so; but money was much scarcer in those days than it is now, and it was with difficulty that the amount was raised. They even coined the silver vessels in churches into money, and great distress was caused in the nation by the payment of the king's ransom.

21. In 1194, after an imprisonment of more than twelve months, Richard landed in England and was joyfully received by his people. It was quite time for him to return, for his brother John was trying to make disturbances in the country, and was assisted by the King of France, who thus broke the promise he had given Richard in the Holy Land.

22. In consequence of the French king's bad faith, a war arose between him and Richard, in the course of which, John returned to his brother, and implored Richard's pardon. The king said, "I forgive him, and hope that I shall as easily forget his injuries as he will my pardon."

23. The war between Richard and the French king lasted, with short intervals of peace, till the death of the English monarch. It was carried on in France. It was while besieging the castle of Chaluz that Richard received his mortal wound. He was walking round it one day, thinking how he could best

attack it, when a man named Bertrand saw him, aimed at him with his bow and arrow, and wounded him in the shoulder.

24. While Richard was dying, his soldiers took the castle, and made prisoners of all who were in it. Then Bertrand was brought before the king, who exclaimed, "Wretch, what have I ever done to you, to oblige you to seek my life?" Bertrand replied that his father and two brothers had been killed in battle by the king, and that Richard might kill him now, but he was willing to die since he had rid the world of a nuisance.

25. Richard, who knew that he had not long to live, was struck with the honesty and boldness of this assertion, and he ordered that Bertrand should be set at liberty, and have some money given him. But I am sorry to say that after the king's death one of his officers cruelly killed Bertrand.

26. Richard was forty-one when he died, and held the English crown for ten years, though he had not spent one year in the country. He was, as you have seen, very courageous and daring. He was sometimes generous too; but I think that we cannot call him a good king, for he did nothing to benefit his country; only drained it of men and money for his wars. But then we must remember that in those times crusades were thought religious service.

1. What people were terribly persecuted?
2. Why did Richard go abroad?
3. Who was Saladin?
4. With whom did Richard quarrel?
5. What was Duke Leopold's revenge?
6. Who discovered the place of Richard's imprisonment; and how?
7. How was Richard killed?

CHAPTER XIII.

JOHN (1199—1216).

1. YOU will remember that Richard the Lion-hearted had once a brother named Geoffrey. He had been dead for many years, but he had left a son named Arthur, who was twelve years old at the time of his uncle Richard's death. A dispute at once arose whether Arthur or Richard's brother John should be King of England.

2. In these days there would be no difficulty at all about the matter. As Arthur's father was older than John, Arthur would now be considered by every one to have a better claim to the throne than John. But at that time, this subject of inheriting the crown was in a very unsettled state, and as Arthur was a boy he was passed over, and John was proclaimed king in the year 1199.

3. Arthur was called the Duke of Brittany. Brittany was a province in France which belonged to him, and there he lived with his mother and beautiful sister Eleanor. The French king said that Arthur ought to reign in England, and sent an army to assist him. A short war was carried on in France between the two parties, but poor Arthur was soon defeated, and taken prisoner by John.

4. This king was one of the meanest and basest men that ever reigned, and his treatment of his young nephew Arthur is a horrible instance of cruelty. We are told that John sent men to the castle of Falaise, where Arthur was imprisoned, to put out his eyes, and so make him unfit to be a king.

5. But the unhappy boy implored them not to execute their horrid purpose, and Hubert de Burgh, the governor of the castle, protected him, so for that time he escaped. It is said that King John once asked one of his attendants to kill Prince Arthur, but he replied that he was a gentleman, and not a hangman, and he would not do the deed.

6. Then this bad king went to the castle where his poor young nephew was imprisoned, and it is believed stabbed him with his own hands, and threw his body into the river beneath the castle walls. Arthur's sister Eleanor, who was called the "Pearl of Brittany," because of her beauty, was imprisoned by John for all the rest of her life. She lived a captive many, many years, and then death set her free.

7. From the time of Arthur's murder, John was hated by his subjects. In consequence of this crime, the King of France tried to deprive him of his French possessions, and soon became master of large provinces which John had not the courage or the sense to know how to keep for himself. The loss of these lands in France made the English dislike their monarch more than ever.

8. Soon afterwards he had a quarrel with the pope about the election of an Archbishop of Canterbury. At first John resisted the pope, who therefore laid his kingdom under an interdict; and proposed that the King of France should invade it. This threat frightened the cowardly John, and he submitted to the pope's will, degrading himself as no other English sovereign ever did, before or since.

9. He consented to acknowledge the pope as his

lord, and promised to pay him a large sum of money every year. But John's subjects were weary of his tyranny, and indignant at the disgrace which he brought upon their country, so they resolved to interfere. In those times, the common people had no power, but many of the barons met together to consider what to do.

10. They assembled in the church of St. Edmonsbury, and there they took a solemn oath before the altar, that they would never rest till they had forced the king to confirm to them by a charter, or written promise, the liberties which they demanded. At the head of these bold barons was Eustace de Vescy, and they were soon joined by nearly all the nobility in the kingdom. Another nobleman, named Robert Fitzwalter, and Stephen Langton, the Archbishop of Canterbury, were among the leaders.

11. John indignantly refused to grant the demands of the barons, and then they made Fitzwalter their general, and with a great number of followers marched to London, where they were joyfully received, and took possession of the city. The king became alarmed, and offered to meet them, and hear from their own lips what they wanted. On a plain called Runnymede, by the Thames, and near Windsor, this meeting took place, in 1215.

12. It was on a summer day in June that the stately barons of England gathered there, with their good swords by their sides, while the sun shone brightly on their helmets and coats of mail, and on the long array of armed men behind them. No doubt the cowardly king cursed them in his evil heart, but

when he looked at their proud, stern faces, he knew that resistance would be vain; so he took the pen in his hand, and signed his name to that great charter which laid the broad foundation of English liberty.

13. It was a glorious and eventful day for England when the Magna Carta, or the great charter, was granted at Runnymede. On that bit of parchment were written words which claimed that wise and temperate freedom which has grown and strengthened through many hundred years, and is now the birth-right of every Englishman. When we rejoice in the blessings of just laws and constitutional government, let us never forget what we owe to the brave men who forced the charter from King John at Runnymede.

14. I will try to explain to you some of the rights secured to the nation by Magna Carta; though you will not understand their importance. One was, that certain taxes should not be raised by the king until he had leave from the council of the kingdom, what we now call the parliament. Another was, that no man should be imprisoned unless he had been properly tried.

15. These and many other precious rights were obtained for all free men. The villains, or serfs, did not at once share in them, but in the course of time they too became free. There were kings after John who broke the laws of Magna Carta, but only for a time. Those laws triumphed in the end, and now all obey them.

16. John was very angry at being made to sign Magna Carta, and though he had sworn that he

would keep its rules, he began directly to break them; and the pope told him that he need not be true to his oath. Then John hired some foreign soldiers and brought them over to England, and ordered them to lay waste the lands of his own subjects.

17. The barons were so enraged at this act, that they asked the son of the French king to come and govern them, instead of the perjured John. They did not at all like a foreign prince to rule over them, but they could not tell what else to do. Still, I cannot think that it was wise to send for the Frenchman. However, he never came. Just at this time John died, and the barons were released from their difficulties, and no longer wanted any one to help them.

18. John's death occurred while he was engaged in preparing an army to attack the barons. He was passing from Lynn to Lincolnshire, along the sea shore, when the tide rose, and washed away all his carriages and baggage. He was ill already, and this accident so troubled him that he became much worse, and died at Newark in the year 1216, when he was forty-eight years old.

1. Name the two claimants to the crown?
2. What became of Prince Arthur?
3. Did John govern well or ill?
4. What was the document called which his subjects forced him to sign?
5. Mention some right secured by it?
6. How did John get soldiers when his subjects would not fight for him?

CHAPTER XIV.

HENRY III. (1216—1272.)

1. John left a little son, only nine years of age, who was crowned king, by the title of Henry III. The Earl of Pembroke was appointed his guardian. Some of the barons supported Henry, but others refused to acknowledge him. The Earl of Pembroke tried to persuade them to let the boy Henry be their king. He said that the poor child was not guilty of his father's crimes, and it was wrong that he should suffer for what his father did.

2. But some of the barons who had invited the French prince over, felt bound in honour to maintain his cause. Months passed before the matter was settled. It was not till there had been a battle in the streets of Lincoln that the French prince gave up his claim, and then the whole kingdom received Henry as their monarch.

3. During the king's boyhood, the Earl of Pembroke was appointed regent. That is, he was to govern for Henry, till the young prince was old enough to govern the kingdom himself. The Earl of Pembroke ruled like a wise, good man, and perhaps, if he had lived longer, he might have prevented some of the troubles of this stormy reign, but at the end of four years he died.

4. When Henry was about nineteen, he wanted some money to carry on a war with France, so he called a parliament of the barons and bishops, and asked them to supply him with as much as he needed.

They said that he should have the money if he would first confirm the great charter, which had been obtained from his father. Henry consented to this condition; and thus Magna Carta became settled, as for ever one of the laws of the land.

5. Some years later, Henry went to France, and took the command of his army himself, but he wasted his time in amusements, and returned in disgrace from his useless journey. He was a weak-minded man, and his country was soon in an unsettled state. His marriage increased the discontent.

6. The bride he selected was Eleanor of Provence. When she came to England she brought a great number of foreigners with her, to the great displeasure of the barons. Henry, too, was very extravagant, and therefore was often in need of money. He would not obey all the laws of the great charter, and the barons told him they would not supply him with money, unless he governed according to the terms agreed upon.

7. For many years this struggle lasted between the king and the barons, and at length a war broke out between them; for the barons were weary of their monarch's faithlessness and folly. Henry's army was headed by his son Edward, a spirited, energetic prince, in every way very superior to his father. The army of the barons was led by Sir Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, whose wife was the king's sister.

8. At last a terrible battle was fought at Evesham, in which Prince Edward was the conquerer. The Earl of Leicester rushed into the thickest of the fight, striving in vain to turn the tide of battle. He was slain, and his son perished also. The English people

blessed Leicester's memory as that of one who had fought for the liberty of his country, and long after his death they used to call him "Sir Simon, the Righteous."

9. Henry III. lived about seven years after the battle of Evesham; but nothing remarkable occurred during the rest of his reign. In the year 1172 he died, and was succeeded on the throne by his son Edward, who had fought so bravely for him At the time of his father's death, Edward was in the Holy Land, engaged in the Crusades.

10. Before I close this chapter, I must tell you something more about Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester. His name will be for ever held in remembrance, for he caused the first regular parliament to be held in England. I must tell you a little about parliament, before I explain to you what he did.

11. In a free country, all the power does not belong to the king, but the nation has a share in the government. In England, as far back as the very early Saxon times, the king alone did not make laws, nor decide important matters, but used to summon councils of the chief men, to ask their advice.

12. All the nobles used to attend these councils. Any free man who was not a noble had three ways of becoming one. If he acquired a certain portion of land, or made three voyages, or became a priest, he was raised to the rank of a thane, or inferior noble, and then he could give his advice to the king, and vote in the council.

13. The Normans, when they came to England, had a council too. Still the kings often did just as

they pleased. It was to limit the power of the king that the barons made John sign Magna Carta. One of the most valuable laws of the great charter was that the king should not raise certain taxes without asking leave of the council.

14. Henry was compelled several times to submit to this law; but the council had not sufficient power always to restrain the king when restraint was needed, and therefore disputes between him and the barons were sometimes settled by fighting. It was the Earl of Leicester who thought of a plan to increase the influence of the council, and to give the free men who were not nobles a share in its power.

15. Leicester's plan was this. He proposed that every county in England should choose two gentlemen, or, as they were called, knights, and that every city should choose two citizens, and send them all to the council to help the king and the nobles to settle the affairs of the kingdom. This was the beginning of the House of Commons.

16. Leicester did not know himself how great a service he was doing his country, for this was the beginning of what is called Representative Government, that is, a government in which the people share, because some of them choose persons to send to parliament to represent them there.

17. Parliament consists of the House of Lords and the House of Commons. Those noblemen who are peers sit in the House of Lords, and the gentlemen who are elected sit in the House of Commons, of which Simon de Montfort, Earl of Leicester, was the founder. But there was many a

struggle during some hundreds of years between king and parliament before the rights of each were fully established.*

1. How old was Henry III. when he became king?
2. Who was his guardian?
3. What was the dispute between the king and the barons?
4. Name the leaders of the two armies?
5. For what is Simon de Montfort most remembered?
6. Of whom did the first House of Commons consist?
7. Name the two Houses that form the Parliament?

CHAPTER XV.

EDWARD I. (1272—1307.)

1. SOME time before the death of Henry III., Edward left England for the Holy Land, to engage in the Crusades. He had married a very good and lovely lady who came from Spain, and was called Eleanor of Castile. When Edward went to the wars, some persons tried to persuade her to stay at home, and not risk the hardships of a journey to Palestine.

2. But Eleanor said that nothing should part her from her husband, and that if she should die abroad, the way to Heaven was as near from Palestine as from England or her native land of Spain. So she took leave of her little children, two of whom she never saw again, and went with Edward to the East.

3. It was while sitting with his wife that an enemy shot a poisoned arrow into his tent, and

* "Now no other chamber, either in Europe or America, exerts the same control over the executive, arrogates the same authority in maintaining peace or provoking war, or, by the temper of its debates, and the grandeur of its renown, commands the same influence over the ideas and destinies of mankind."—*Sir B. Lytton.*

wounded him in the arm. If the poison remained in his arm, he was sure to die, and his servants could not tell what to do. Then Eleanor knelt down by him, and sucked the poison out of the wound, and so saved her husband's life.

4. Before Edward returned to England, he heard of the death of his two little sons and of his father. When these sad tidings were told him he seemed more grieved at the loss of his father than at the loss of his children, which surprised his attendants, and they asked how it was so with him. "Because," said he, "I may have more sons, but I can never have another father.

5. Edward was joyfully received in England, for his people knew already that he was a brave and clever prince. He and his beautiful queen were both crowned in Westminster Abbey a few weeks after his return. He gave himself but little rest through all his reign. The great object of his life was to become master of the whole of Great Britain, for Scotland and Wales were then separate from England, and governed by princes of their own.

6. The English and the Welsh were frequently at war. The princes of Wales owned the King of England as their lord, but they did not think it necessary to obey him. At the time of which I am writing, a prince named Llewellyn ruled in Wales. Edward wished to quarrel with him, and soon found an opportunity to do so.

7. He requested Llewellyn to come to London; but Llewellyn refused to comply, saying that he could not trust Edward, and was afraid of being taken

prisoner. Then Edward seized a vessel which was carrying to Wales a French lady who was to be Llewellyn's wife, and kept her in England for two years, as a prisoner.

8. Edward also invaded Wales, and took possession of several places there, and Llewellyn was so perplexed, that at last he said that if Edward would withdraw the English army, and give up the imprisoned bride, he would promise that if he died without children, then Edward should have possession of Wales.

9. The brave Welsh could not bear that their country should be thus given away, and said that they would never submit to strangers; and soon a war broke out again. At first Llewellyn was victorious, but was deserted by some of his followers, and then he was surprised by his enemies, and killed in battle. His brother David was taken prisoner, and most barbarously put to death at Shrewsbury.

10. You have heard, perhaps, of the Welsh bards, men who used to go about the country singing, and playing on their beautiful harps, and who were much honoured by the people of Wales. It has been said that Edward killed great numbers of them, but it is believed that this charge is not true. Edward was now master of Wales, but the Welsh could not bear to have him for their king, and we ought to respect them, and be sorry for them, for every nation is right in wishing to be free.

11. To lessen their dislike, Edward told the Welsh nobles that he would give them a prince who had never been out of Wales, and who could not

speak a word of English. The nobles wondered who this could be, and then, when they were assembled together, Edward presented to them his infant son in his long robes, who had just been born in Carnarvon castle, and so had never yet been out of Wales, and who could not speak English, as he could not speak at all. From that time the eldest son of the King of England has always been called Prince of Wales.

12. Edward now turned his attention to Scotland. The king of that country was dead, and his little grandchild, Margaret, who lived in Norway, as her mother had married the Norwegian king, was now Queen of Scotland. Edward proposed that when his little son and Margaret were grown up they should marry, and then govern England and Scotland as one kingdom.

13. This proposal was agreed to, but the little girl, "the fair maid of Norway," died on her voyage to Scotland, before she was six years old. Her death caused great confusion in Scotland, because many persons claimed the crown. The two chief claimants were John Baliol, and Robert Bruce. King Edward interfered to settle the question.

14. He decided that Baliol had the better right, but required that Baliol should acknowledge him as lord. Of course, this demand displeased the Scots, and all the more so, as Edward treated Baliol in a provoking manner. At last the people of Scotland persuaded their king not to submit any longer to Edward's interference; and in consequence a war broke out.

15. For a year neither party gained much advantage, but at last the Scots were entirely defeated. Then, when their condition seemed desperate, there appeared to save his country an heroic Scotchman, Sir William Wallace, whose name deserves enduring honour, as that of one who dared all things in a righteous cause. He fought courageously and well, but Edward's army was the stronger, and in 1298, Wallace lost a battle at Falkirk.

16. He was not taken prisoner at once. Perhaps he might have escaped, but one of his followers was so base and wicked as to betray him to his enemies. He was executed in London, but though he died amidst every indignity upon a scaffold, yet it was a glorious death, for he laid down his life for the sake of others. He had risked everything to save his country, and his last offering was his own brave life.

17. Robert Bruce now led the Scottish army. In the year 1307, Edward left England with an immense number of soldiers, determined to conquer Scotland; but he died upon the way, leaving behind him the reputation of being a great and able prince, though he was at times, as you have seen, guilty of cruel actions, when he thought that such would help to carry out his plans; but it was not his nature to be cruel.

18. Edward was too wise a king to quarrel with the barons, as his father had done, but he could not always agree with them; and when they thought that he claimed more power than rightfully belonged to him, there were fearless men among them who opposed him, mighty and clever though he was. He

had the sense to yield to just demands, and in his reign the laws were improved. The two barons to whom England owed most for their patriotic courage in checking Edward, were Humphrey Bohun, Earl of Hereford, and Roger Bigod, Earl of Norfolk.

19. The good Queen Eleanor died before her husband, and he mourned deeply for her loss. Her body was brought from Lincolnshire to Westminster Abbey, in London, to be buried; and the king erected crosses in memory of her at the places where it rested by the way. One of these places, now called Charing Cross, and in the midst of London, was then a lovely village, and its name is taken from two French words which mean "The dear Queen's Cross."

1. Where was Edward I. when his father died?
2. What was the great object of his life?
3. What country did he conquer?
4. Who was the first English Prince of Wales?
5. Did Edward succeed in conquering Scotland?
6. Name two brave Scotchmen who resisted him.

CHAPTER XVI.

EDWARD II. (1307—1327.)

1. EDWARD THE FIRST was succeeded by his eldest son, Edward, Prince of Wales, who was crowned king by the title of Edward II., in 1307. He was a weak-minded man, and allowed himself to be entirely governed by favourites, so that his people soon despised him. He married Isabella the daughter of the King of France. She was a beautiful but wicked woman, and was the cause of evil and misery in England.

2. Edward the Second's first favourite was Pierce Gaveston, whom he loaded with wealth and honours. The barons were very angry to see this young man made so powerful and rich, and to satisfy them the king banished Gaveston from the kingdom. The favourite soon returned to England, and was then put to death by the barons.

3. Soon afterwards Edward determined to invade Scotland. He gathered a very large army, and a battle was fought at Bannockburn, near Stirling, in which he was utterly defeated, while the Scots gained a great victory. Edward was compelled to make peace with Robert Bruce, who was now King of Scotland, and a brave and wise ruler.

4. Edward made no further attempt to conquer Scotland, for he saw that it would be useless. In a little while he was obliged to fight with his own barons, who were greatly displeased because he had a new favourite, named Hugh le Despencer. The leader of the barons was the Earl of Lancaster, who was aided by Roger Mortimer.

5. At first the barons were successful, and compelled the king to banish Despencer; but the next year Edward's army gained a decided victory. The powerful Earl of Lancaster was taken prisoner by the king, and beheaded at his own castle. I need not tell you many particulars of this miserable reign; but will hasten to its close.

6. The bad Queen Isabella raised an army to fight against her husband; and she was assisted by Roger Mortimer. The barons and bishops who belonged to the queen's party resolved that the king should no

longer reign, but that his son, a boy of fourteen, also named Edward, should be crowned king. So the young prince was proclaimed under the title of Edward III., but he was too youthful to govern, and the queen and Roger Mortimer were the real rulers of the kingdom.

7. Poor, helpless, weak-minded Edward II. was a prisoner. He was brutally treated by those who were appointed by his wicked wife and Roger Mortimer to guard him. At last the unfortunate king was cruelly murdered in Berkeley Castle, in Gloucestershire. It was generally believed that Roger Mortimer had given orders to have him killed, and it was suspected that Isabella had consented to the murder.

8. During four years the queen and Mortimer governed the country, and then the barons would not submit to them any longer. The parliament had met at Nottingham, and the queen and her favourite were staying at Nottingham Castle, which was a very strong-built place, and where they thought themselves quite safe. But the time of their fall was at hand.

9. Some of Rogers Mortimer's enemies entered this strong castle by an underground passage, and took him prisoner at midnight. He was brought to trial, charged with the murder of the king, and with having assumed a power to which he had no right. He was condemned to be beheaded; and Isabella was sentenced to remain a captive for life in a handsome castle, where she was well treated, but which she was never suffered to leave. She lived a prisoner twenty-

seven years, being visited by her son once every year.

1. How did Edward II. offend his subjects?
2. What battle did he fight with the Scotch, and who won it?
3. Did Isabella fight for, or against, her husband?
4. Who was proclaimed king by her party?
5. What became of Edward II.?
6. What became of Mortimer and Isabella?

CHAPTER XVII.

EDWARD III. (1327—1377).

1. EDWARD III. began to reign in the year 1327. He was clever, brave, and energetic, and altogether very unlike his father. He married Philippa of Hainault, a good and gentle princess, of whom he was very fond. When Edward had been King of England for about six years the French monarch died, and then Edward claimed the crown of France.

2. You remember that Edward's mother Isabella was a French princess, and it was on this ground that he said he ought to be King of France. Philip of Valois, a French prince, also laid claim to the throne; and as in those days the law in such matters was not very clear, a war broke out between Edward and Philip.

3. Edward and his soldiers invaded France, and some engagements took place in which neither party gained any very decided advantage. At last Edward and Philip drew up their armies near the little town of Crecy, in the north of France, and there, on Saturday, the 26th of August, 1346, was fought a great

battle. Philip had a very much larger army than Edward, but Edward's troops were in the best position.

4. Edward's eldest son, a brave, spirited boy of fifteen, called the Black Prince, from the colour of his armour, commanded one body of his father's men. Some of the French soldiers began the attack with their bows and arrows, for gunpowder was not yet in use. They rushed upon the English troops, who remained quite firm, and did not fall back a step, but presently shot their arrows so thick and fast, that they came down like a shower of snow on their enemies.

5. For some time the battle raged fiercely. The Black Prince, who fought very bravely, was surrounded by foes, and one of the English officers advised Edward to send some more soldiers to help the royal boy. But Edward said that he would not do so, for he wished his son to have all the honour of that day to himself.

6. At last the French army fled on every side, with tremendous loss. It is said that 30,000 of their foot-soldiers lay dead upon the field of Crecy, besides a vast number of nobles and gentlemen. No words can fitly tell on what a scene of horror that summer Sunday morning rose, when the tumult of the battle was over, and the dead and dying strewed the ground, where yesterday they had stood in health and strength. Thousands of wives were made widows, and thousands of little children fatherless in that great battle.

7. Three days after he had won the victory of Crecy, Edward began to besiege Calais, a very strong

and important town on the north coast of France. For eleven long months the governor and people of Calais made a noble defence. They suffered most dreadfully for want of food, but it was only when they were reduced to the last extremity, and were starving, that they offered to surrender the town to Edward, on condition that he would allow the inhabitants to leave it unharmed.

8. I am ashamed to say that instead of admiring the gallant resistance which the people of Calais had made, Edward felt very angry because they had so long opposed him; and this was his answer—"that if six of the principal gentlemen of Calais would come out to him bareheaded and barefooted, with halters around their necks, and the keys of the town in their hands, and deliver themselves up to him, then he would spare all the other inhabitants."

9. The governor of Calais assembled the people in the market-place, and told them of this cruel demand. At first tears and wailing broke from the crowd, but presently, one of the chief men of the city, named Eustace de St. Pierre, exclaimed—"To save the people, I will be the first to put my life in jeopardy."

10. Five other gentlemen, as devoted and true-hearted as Eustace de St. Pierre, soon joined him, and these six brave men left the town according to Edward's orders. He thought to dishonour them by bidding them come to him bare-headed and barefooted, with ropes around their necks; but the dishonour was his, not theirs.

11. For if men are truly good and great, their

enemies can never degrade them. And when those noble citizens of Calais stood before Edward, they were worthy of far more honour than was he with all his victories. For the truest greatness is in self-sacrifice, and they were offering up their own lives to save their countrymen, whilst he was taking a base and cruel advantage of his conquest.

12. When these six generous men were brought to Edward, they fell on their knees and asked for mercy: but he replied fiercely, that he would put them to death. The gallant English barons who stood beside him, felt such reverence for the nobleness of Eustace de St. Pierre and his five companions, that they shed tears of sorrow when they saw that the king was determined to kill them.

13. But just then Queen Philippa rushed into the tent, and kneeling down before Edward, implored him, for her sake, to spare their lives. The king was silent for a few minutes, and then he said, "Lady, I wish you had been in some other place; but I cannot deny you."

14. So at Queen Philippa's request the six gentlemen of Calais were saved. If I knew nothing else about her but this one act, I should believe that she was a good woman, because she used her influence over her husband, to persuade him to act mercifully and justly, and kept him from staining his soul with a cruel, shameful deed. She was a clever woman too; and before she joined him in France, gained a victory for him over the King of Scotland.

15. The siege of Calais was followed by a truce, which lasted for several years, in the course of which

Philip, King of France, died, and his son John reigned in his stead. In 1355, the war began again. This time the Black Prince commanded the whole English army. In September, 1356, was fought the great battle of Poitiers.

16. The Black Prince had but from 8,000 to 12,000 men; while the number of the French troops was four or five times as great. To attack the English they had to go through a narrow lane, and as they advanced between the hedges, the English bowmen let fly their arrows thick and fast, with unerring aim, from every side. The very numbers of the French threw them into confusion, and after a brave attempt to rally, their panic became general, and the great French army was defeated with frightful slaughter.

17. Besides the many thousands of brave common French soldiers who perished at Poitiers, there died also an unusual number of knights and nobles, who, perhaps, were some of them too proud to fly, but fought and fell where they stood; and King John was taken prisoner. The Black Prince treated the conquered king very generously, and showed him as much respect as if he still wore a crown—waiting on him at table, and refusing to sit in his presence.

18. John remained a captive for some time, and then both parties were tired of war, and peace was agreed to, by which Edward III. gave up all his claims to the throne of France, but kept the places he had taken there. It was also arranged that King John should be set at liberty if he could pay a heavy ransom. Edward allowed him to go home to France to try to get the money, but the French people,

exhausted with the long wars, were very poor, and could not afford so large a sum.

19. When John found this to be the case, he returned to England and gave himself up as a prisoner again. He valued freedom greatly, but he valued his honour far more, as good men ever will; and he could not honestly remain in France, unless he could fulfil Edward's conditions, by raising the ransom. No doubt he looked sadly back on his native land, as the vessel bore him away from liberty and a throne to a prison in England. But he took a good conscience with him, and that is better far than crowns and kingdoms. After some years of captivity he died.

20. In 1376, the Black Prince died, in the forty-sixth year of his age. He was deeply regretted by the nation, as a wise, brave, and generous prince. The good Queen Philippa had died some years before, so that the latter part of Edward the Third's long reign was clouded with sorrow. Sad to say, after her death he allowed himself to be influenced by unprincipled and foolish persons.

21. He only survived his son about twelve months, and then died in 1327, having governed England for fifty years. He left behind him the character of a great and brave king, though his bravery was sometimes disgraced by acts of cruelty. Even the reputation of the Black Prince is not free from such blots. He and his father were generous to princes and gentlemen, but when they were fighting they often thought but little of the sufferings of the poor.

22. When we wonder that men so brave as they

should ever have been cruel, we must remember that in their days none but the priests had Bibles. The rest of the people never read the Scriptures. They rarely or never heard that Christ had said that His followers must be merciful, and so they often acted from a spirit of revenge. And yet sometimes they were more Christian in their deeds than many of us who read the Bible every day.

1. What foreign country did Edward III. claim?
2. Name his first great victory over the French?
3. What was his son called?
4. What town did Edward besiege?
5. On what cruel conditions did he offer to spare the inhabitants?
6. Whose entreaties saved the six brave citizens?
7. Name another battle in which Edward defeated the French.

CHAPTER XVIII.

RICHARD II. (1377—1399).

1. RICHARD II. was but eleven years old when he succeeded to the throne of his grandfather, Edward III. Some noblemen were appointed to govern the country during his childhood, one of whom was John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, the little king's uncle.

2. When Richard was about sixteen, a rebellion broke out among the poor. You remember that the lower classes were almost slaves under the Feudal System, which prevailed in England, in the early days of its history. But gradually their position was improving; and Edward III. and his barons had done much to give liberty to the people on their lands.

Still, many of the poor were not really free, and were often oppressed.

3. There was much discontent in the country, and this was increased by a new tax of one shilling levied on every person above fifteen years of age. Money was a great deal scarcer then than it is now, so that a shilling was a larger sum in those days than it is to us. This new tax was called the poll-tax.

4. One of the collectors of the poll-tax called for it at the house of a workman in Kent, named Wat Tyler, who had a beautiful daughter, to whom the tax-collector behaved most insolently. This so enraged her father, that he struck the collector a tremendous blow, which killed him, This was the beginning of the rebellion. Sixty thousand men soon joined Wat Tyler, and he marched at their head to London, to insist that the king would do away with the laws which oppressed them.

5. Most of the demands of Wat Tyler and his followers were just and moderate. They asked that all bondage should be abolished; that they should be allowed to buy and sell in markets and fairs; and that all concerned in the revolt should be pardoned. In addition to these requests, they demanded that the rents of all lands should be alike, and in requiring this they were were very foolish and mistaken.

6. The king, with many soldiers and noblemen, rode out to Smithfield, near London, to hear what Wat Tyler and his companions had to say. During the conversation, one of the royal party noticed that while Tyler was talking to Richard, he was moving about a dagger he held in his hand, as if he were

going to use it. Whether Tyler had any intention of injuring the king, I cannot tell, for we have never heard what his friends had to say on the subject. But this is certain, that Richard's attendant leant forward, and with his sword gave Tyler a mortal wound.

7. Before the rebels had time to recover from their dismay, the king came boldly forward, and shouted to them not to be troubled for the loss of their leader. "I will be your leader!" he said; and this spirited conduct so won their hearts that they submitted to him. The revolt was soon crushed, but many of the rebels were treated with great cruelty. Richard was very young when these events took place, but as he grew older, it became plainer every day that he would never be a brave, wise, generous man like his father, the Black Prince.

8. For many years he submitted to the dictates of his uncles. At last John of Gaunt went abroad, and during his absence the kingdom was ruled by the Duke of Gloucester, another uncle of Richard. But the king had favourites who tried to interfere with the government. The Duke of Gloucester accused them of being traitors, and the parliament banished some of them from the country, and put some to death.

9. This made Richard very angry, and he resolved that the Duke of Gloucester should no longer govern, and most treacherously took him prisoner. He went one night to his uncle's house, and begged him to return with him to attend to some pressing business. The duke consented, and entered a boat which he thought would take him to the king's palace, but

instead of doing so it carried him over to Calais, in France, where he was imprisoned by Richard's order.

10. There he was soon murdered, it is suspected by his nephew's commands. When this wicked deed was done, Richard thought that he should be able to have his own way. But he was very weak-minded, and when he was left to himself, he ruled with such folly and tyranny, that he gave great disgust to his people. He banished two powerful lords, one of whom was his cousin, Henry of Lancaster, son of John of Gaunt. This act was partly the cause of Richard's ruin.

11. Not long after Henry of Lancaster was sent out of the kingdom, his father died, and the king took possession of his estates, which should have been his son's. Then Richard went to Ireland with a splendid train of soldiers and courtiers. While he was there Henry of Lancaster landed in England and tried to raise an army. He was at once joined by some powerful barons, and in a few days he was at the head of sixty thousand men.

12. The nation was quite tired of Richard's injustice and foolishness, and Henry was joyfully received everywhere. When Richard heard of what was going on he returned to England, but too late to save his crown. By treachery and falsehood, Henry of Lancaster took him prisoner.

13. Henry then said to him—"My lord, I have come before my time; but your people complain that they have been governed too rigorously for twenty years. If it please God I will help you to govern

them better." Richard replied—"Fair cousin, since it pleaseth you, it pleaseth me well."

14. Richard was then compelled to give up his crown; and on the 30th of September a great assembly of the parliament was held in Westminster Hall, and there was read aloud the paper in which Richard renounced his throne; and the lords and the other members of parliament said that he should be king no longer, and then the hall rang with cheers.

15. The next day it was declared that Henry of Lancaster should reign; and he was crowned King of England by the title of Henry IV. Poor Richard was imprisoned in the Tower of London, which is a very strong, very gloomy castle. His friends attempted to liberate him, but their plan was discovered, and then the unhappy monarch was starved to death in the Tower—many think by Henry the Fourth's command; though some suppose that in his despair he refused all food, being resolved to die.

16. Richard had been bad and cruel himself, but that did not make it less wicked to starve him, if Henry gave such an order. He was thirty-three at the time of his miserable death, and had been twice married. His first wife was Anne of Bohemia, who was liked by the nation, and called by them "The Good Queen." After her death he married a sweet little French princess, named Isabella, who was only eight years old when she became Queen of England.

17. It was in the reign of Richard II. that John Wickliffe lived, who is called "The Morning Star of the Reformation," because he was one of the first in England who preached against the errors which had

crept into the Roman Catholic Church. This good man died in 1384, at his parsonage of Lutterworth, in Leicestershire; but the doctrines he had taught lived and bore fruit long after he was dead.

1. What was the poll-tax?
2. Who headed an insurrection?
3. How was the leader killed?
4. Describe the king's conduct.
5. Who returned from banishment to claim the throne?
6. How did Richard die?

HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

CHAPTER XIX.

HENRY IV. (1399—1413).

1. HENRY IV., first cousin to Richard II., and like him grandson of Edward III., now ruled in England. There was then living the Earl of March, a little boy about nine years old, who had a better claim to the crown than Henry. This and other causes led to a good deal of fighting. First, Henry invaded Scotland with a badly-arranged army, and was obliged by want of provisions to retreat; but he would not let his soldiers rob the poor people, whose cottages they passed.

2. Meanwhile a rebellion broke out in Henry's own dominions, headed by Owen Glendower, a gallant Welsh gentleman. Some of his lands had been seized unjustly by a neighbouring lord, and when the king and parliament would not help him to gain his rights, he took up arms to help himself. He claimed to be a descendant of the old Welsh princes, and at last he asserted a right to the whole of Wales. He fought so well that the king and his army could not subdue him, and Henry was obliged to retreat, because he could not get food for his men.

3. In the autumn of the next year, Henry again tried in vain to conquer the brave Welshman. Owen

Glendower won two great victories; and afterwards tremendous rain came down, which washed away the king's tent, and so harassed the English soldiers, as the torrents swept through the valleys, that Henry was once more obliged to retire; and Owen was acknowledged by the Welsh as their prince.

4. Henry soon found troubles nearer home to engage his attention. The Earl of Northumberland had been very active in helping Henry to obtain the crown, and he thought that the king was not grateful enough for this service; he became so dissatisfied that at last he and his daring son Henry Hotspur determined to fight against Henry, and try to make the young Earl of March king. Owen Glendower joined the Earl, and they raised a strong army.

5. And now began that worst of all wars—a civil war. Englishmen were to meet Englishmen on English ground, and fight against each other. The Earl of Northumberland was ill, so his son took the command of their followers, and met King Henry and his troops near Shrewsbury. Each army contained about fourteen thousand men.

6. They waited through the night, but the sun rose early the next morning, for it was the height of summer, and lighted them to their bloody work. The air was pierced by whistling arrows, the clang of swords, the cries of wounded men, and the shouts of the leaders urging on their soldiers to the fight.

7. But at length Henry Hotspur was killed, and then his troops lost heart, and were soon defeated. Henry IV. was master of the field that now was

heaped with thousands of the slain. Meanwhile the old Earl of Northumberland had got well, and left home to join his army; but he turned back in bitter sorrow when he heard that his gallant son had perished, and that the battle was lost. This time the king forgave him.

8. Still war and bloodshed. The French had meanly taken advantage of the disturbances in England to seize English ships, and landing on the English coast, had attacked some of our sea-ports. They plundered and burnt Plymouth. Henry then sent his son, the Prince of Wales, to make a descent on the French coasts. Not long afterwards the Earl of Northumberland and Scroop, the archbishop, rebelled. They were defeated, and Scroop was executed; the first time that a bishop was beheaded on an English scaffold. The earl fled to Scotland, and finally fell in battle, fighting against Henry's troops, in 1408.

9. In 1405, the French attacked Falmouth, and then sailed to Milford Haven to help Owen Glendower. But they soon grew tired, and sailed home again. After this we hear little more of the brave Glendower. He could no longer raise an army, but we know that he was never conquered, and that at last he died, as he had lived, free among the mountains of his native land.

10. Before closing this chapter I must tell you an anecdote of Henry's son, the Prince of Wales. When he was a young man he was very unsteady, and his companions were chosen from among the foolish and the bad. One of these acquaintances of his was

once brought to trial for some ill-conduct before a judge, named Sir William Gascoyne.

11. The Prince of Wales was present, and was so angry at the sentence, that he threatened to strike the judge. The judge very properly sent him to prison for this offence. When the king was told of it, he exclaimed, "that he was happy in having a judge who would act so fearlessly and wisely, and still more happy in having a son who was willing to bear such punishment."

12. We see in this reign the power of the House of Commons steadily increasing. Indeed Henry the Fourth's right to the throne came from the parliament which had made him king. Several persons who did not agree with all the doctrines of the Roman Catholic Church were cruelly put to death in this reign. Henry died in 1413, aged forty-six, when he had been King of England for thirteen years.

1. What neighbouring country did Henry invade?
2. Give some account of Owen Glendower?
3. What nobleman and his son rebelled against Henry?
4. What battle ended their rebellion?
5. What daring leader was killed there?
6. What towns did the French attack?

CHAPTER XX.

HENRY V. (1413—1422.)

1. THE young king, Henry V., succeeded his father in 1413, and began his reign by several acts of generosity. He set at liberty the Earl of March; and ordered that the body of the unfortunate Richard II.

should be taken from its lowly resting-place, and laid in Westminster Abbey, among the royal dead, and by the side of his wife, "Good Queen Anne." He also allowed the brave Hotspur's son to come home from Scotland, and take possession of all his father's estates. Henry V. treated many others in the same manner, who from being enemies became his faithful friends.

2. He had not reigned more than a year before he made the same ridiculous claim on the French crown as Edward I. You will remember that at one time the English had large possessions in France, which had been gradually lost, but many of the kings of England had been anxious to regain them, and Henry V., a young and ambitious prince, resolved to make some conquests there.

3. France was then in a deplorable state. Her king was subject to fits of madness, and the whole country was in confusion, distracted by quarrels between two great nobles. People were constantly imprisoned and killed; so that the poor thought they should not mind if the English did conquer France. They said, "What can the English do to us more than our own princes?"

4. In 1415 Henry landed with his army at Harfleur, a French seaport. But before he began to besiege that place he commanded his soldiers not to rob or injure the poor people through whose villages they passed, and said that if any man disobeyed this order he should be put to death. Then he attacked Harfleur, which was strongly defended, and lost a great number of his men by disease, for the neighbourhood was very unhealthy.

5. The people of Harfleur were also suffering terribly from disease, and they surrendered to Henry. His army was by this time very small, and it is said that some of his officers proposed returning home. But Henry would not hear of this, and advanced with his little band farther into the country. The English troops were now less than nine thousand men, and by and by they came in sight of the French army, which numbered at least fifty thousand.

6. It was on a moonlight night in October, that weary, and cold, and hungry, the English soldiers made ready for the next day's fight. Though they were so few, not one of them talked of yielding to the French. The next morning Henry rode with a bright and cheerful face among his men, bidding them feel no fear; and then the battle began.

7. The English bowmen began the attack by shooting at the enemy their strong arrows, three feet long, which caused great confusion among the gallant French soldiers, who defended themselves bravely, but their great numbers only added to their difficulties. They tried to break the English lines with their cavalry, but the ground was too slippery for horses, and they had to retreat. Before the day was over the French were entirely defeated, and Henry V. had won the great battle of Agincourt.

8. But Henry's success was stained by a horrible circumstance which occurred just after the victory. The English had taken a vast number of prisoners; and suddenly it was said that some fresh French troops troops were coming to fight the English, and of course the French prisoners would help their own countrymen.

9. Fearing that all he had gained might be lost, Henry gave the terrible and cruel order that all the prisoners should be killed. When very many of them had been put to death, it was found that the report of another French army being near was a false alarm. The king at once stopped the slaughter, but the dead could not be restored to life, and the dark blot remains on the victory of Agincourt.

10. After this wonderful battle Henry and his little army set out for England. His people welcomed him home with great joy. At Dover, when they saw his boat rowing to the shore, they dashed into the sea to meet him, and carried him to land.

11. The results of the victory of Agincourt were most important. All Henry's plans were successful, for France was in too distressed a state to resist him any longer; and at last a treaty was made between the English and French, by which it was agreed that Henry should marry Catherine the daughter of the French king, Charles VI., and that after Charles's death, Henry should be King of France.

12. As Charles VI. was too ill to govern, it was also arranged for Henry to rule in his name at once. Soon afterwards the marriage of Henry and Catherine took place, and was celebrated with much splendour. The great object of his ambition was now obtained; but in little more than two years the victorious king was called to resign his conquests and his honours.

13. He had hoped to enjoy what he had gained through a long life, but at the age of thirty-four he died. Perhaps at first he felt it hard to give up everything: his two kingdoms, his beautiful wife, and

infant son, but he calmly took leave of all, and seemed quite resigned to die. His subjects were very sorry for his death, for he had much endeared himself to them.

14. In this reign also the followers of Wickliffe endured persecution for the sake of their religion. One of the first and most distinguished of these noble martyrs was Lord Cobham, who was burnt to death in 1417, while Henry was away in France. He was executed partly because of his religion, and partly because, rendered desperate by persecution, he had fought against the government.

15. In the reign of Henry V. the ladies wore very ugly and heavy head-dresses, some of which had great horns sticking out from them. Their gowns were pretty and elegant, being made high, and fastened at the waist by a band. When I say they were pretty I must omit the sleeves, which were so absurdly long that they often swept the ground. Gentlemen wore long robes, or short jackets and sleeves like the ladies, and their hair was cut short, which till this time had been worn curled or long.

1. What foreign country did Henry claim?
2. What was the state of France?
3. What great battle did he gain?
4. What was the number of the English army, and what of the French?
5. What was the result of the victory of Agincourt?
6. Whose followers were persecuted in this reign?

CHAPTER XXI.

HENRY VI. (1422—1461).

1. IN 1422, when only nine months old, Henry VI. inherited his father's crown. Poor little baby! there was a miserable life in store for him, but now in his soft, warm cradle, he knew nothing of his coming troubles. His uncles were appointed to govern for him—one in England, and one, the Duke of Bedford, in France.

2. Charles VI. was also dead, and his son, who was called the Dauphin, claimed the crown of France, and said that he would not give it up to the English; and thus a war broke out between him and them, which lasted many years. War always causes a great deal of misery, and you cannot imagine how wretched France was at that time. Many parts of the country were entirely deserted; people fled for safety to the forests; the land was left untilled, and the cities were full of soldiers.

3. In 1424, the Duke of Bedford gained a great victory over the French at the battle of Verneuil; and for seven years the English were generally successful, but in 1429 they met with a remarkable defeat, and I must speak of the circumstances which led to it.

4. There was then living in a village in France a young shepherd-girl, named Joan of Arc, the daughter of a poor man. She was beautiful, industrious, and good. When Joan was alone in the dark forests, watching her sheep and lambs, she used to think of the sufferings of her country, and long to save it. At

last she thought that in the solemn stillness of the woods she heard heavenly voices calling her to deliver France. She believed it was the will of God, and that He would give her all the strength she needed. At that time the English were besieging the city of Orleans, and if they took it, the hope of the French was gone.

5. So Joan went to the Dauphin and told him that it was her faith that God would save France through her. The Dauphin gave her a band of soldiers, and she dressed herself in armour, placed herself at their head, and went to assist the French who were in Orleans, and who were bravely defending their city.

6. Mounted on a white horse, Joan led on her soldiers, and though she was once sadly wounded, she was in the end victorious, and the English were obliged to retreat. They were soon afterwards defeated in another battle; and then Joan had the happiness of seeing the Dauphin crowned King of France, by the title of Charles VII. And the chief person in bringing all these events to pass was the humble shepherdess. They called her the "Maid of Orleans."

7. She asked no reward for herself; she only requested that the people in the place where she lived might not pay taxes in future. This privilege was granted; and it is said that for many years afterwards when the tax-gatherer came to her native village, instead of setting down in his book how much money the inhabitants must pay, he used to write "nothing, for the maid's sake."

8. Now that she had seen the Dauphin crowned,

Joan thought that her work was done, and she wished to go to her own quiet home again, and live peacefully as she had done before. But the king was not willing that she should leave the French army, and begged her so much to stay that at last she consented, but sadly, and with tears.

9. The rest of her history is a sad, sad tale. She was taken prisoner by the English, and though she was so good and gentle, it was said she was a witch, for people believed there were such things as witches in those days. It is only fair to our own countrymen to remember that many Frenchmen who disliked the Dauphin were as anxious to have her put to death as any Englishman could be.

10. She was now in the hands of her enemies, and no power on earth could save her from their vengeance. She was kept in prison for a long time, and often puzzled and wearied with many threats and questions of her persecutors, and at last they made up their minds as to her fate, and sentenced the Maid of Orleans to be burnt to death.

11. She lamented bitterly at first, when they told her of her doom. She said that she was not afraid to be killed by the sword or by hanging, but that she dreaded fire. But when the time came she was brave and calm. She was tied to a stake; the wood piled up around her was lighted, and the cruel flames twined quickly round her slender form.

12. Many of her enemies who came to see her die, wept for pity, and could not bear to behold that dreadful sight. Those around her heard her utter the name of "Jesus," and that was the last word on

her lips. But no fire could blast the memory of the lowly shepherd-girl, the self-devoted Maid of Orleans.

13. The war between England and France went on for a few years more. The little English king, Henry VI., was even crowned at Paris, so that for a time there were two kings of France. But in the year 1435, Henry's uncle, the Duke of Bedford. died. He was a very able, clever man, and when he was dead, his nephew's affairs soon went wrong. The English lost town after town in France, and at length were obliged to withdraw their armies altogether, and give up the idea of holding France.

14. No doubt this was a great disappointment to the English at the time, but they were far better without France than with it; for the French would never have been willing to be conquered, and would never have rested till they had got rid of the English, who would have neglected their own affairs in attending to France. It was well for both countries that she soon made herself free again.

15. After the English had been compelled to leave France, some Frenchmen wished to destroy the tomb of the Duke of Bedford, who was buried there, but the French king said, "Let him rest in peace, and be thankful that he does so rest; for were he alive now he would make the boldest of us tremble."

16. We must now return to England, and see what was going on there. As Henry VI. grew up, it was plain that he was very unfit to be a king. He was amiable and kind, but he was extremely weak-minded, and as he could not govern for himself, his affairs were always managed by some of those about

him. He married a beautiful princess, Margaret of Anjou, who was a clever, but violent-tempered, unfeminine woman.

17. It was not strange in these circumstances, that there should be much discontent and disorder in the kingdom. An Irishman, named Cade, placed himself at the head of nearly 20,000 men of Kent, and marched with them towards London, demanding that the king would put an end to bad government. The king's troops were called out; Cade's followers were dispersed, and himself killed.

18. But all smaller evils were soon forgotten in a frightful civil war which broke out in England. It arose in this way: Henry VI. and his father and his grandfather were descended from John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, a younger son of Edward III., and the crown was now claimed by the Duke of York, who was descended from an elder son of Edward.

19. This war is known in history by the name of the War of the Roses, because all Henry the Sixth's party, who were called Lancastrians, wore a red rose, and the Yorkists, who were the Duke of York's party, wore a white rose. The king was not able to take any share in the struggle, but Queen Margaret was very active.

20. The first battle was fought at St. Alban's, in 1455, in which Margaret's army was defeated. Then followed other engagements, in one of which the Duke of York met with an overthrow, and fled with his sons to Ireland. He now returned with a large army, gained a victory over the queen's troops, and then entered London in triumph. But his death was near

at hand. In 1460, in a battle at Wakefield Green, the Duke of York was utterly defeated, himself slain, and one of his young sons cruelly murdered on the field.

21. He was a brave, generous man, and had treated Henry kindly, even while fighting against him; but Margaret did not remember this. His eldest son, Edward, a very young and handsome man, inherited his title and continued the war. After a good deal of fighting, Edward went to London, and called some lords together to speak to them about Henry's inability to govern. An immense number of people assembled in some fields in the neighbourhood of the city, and a nobleman went to them, told them Edward's claim, and asked if they would have him for their monarch.

22. They said, "Yes," and clapped their hands, and shouted, "King Edward," and the next day he was proclaimed as Edward the Fourth. But his throne was not secure. Not many days afterwards he had a desperate engagement with Margaret's army, at Towton in Yorkshire. For hours, on Palm Sunday, the battle raged in the midst of a snow-storm. It is said that 37,000 Englishmen fell on that fatal field, and far and wide the pure white snow was dyed with blood. At last Edward was the victor.

23. Margaret endeavoured to leave the country with her little boy. In passing through a forest, she was met by some robbers, who took away her rings and jewels. She escaped while they were quarrelling; but soon she saw another robber coming towards her, with a sword in his hand. She determined to ask

his protection, and showing him the young prince, she said, "Here, my friend, I commit to your care the safety of the king's son."

24. The robber was very much surprised, but he promised that he would do all he could to assist her. By his help, she safely reached France with her little son, where she tried to get some more soldiers from the King of France. Meanwhile poor Henry VI. went to Scotland, and received shelter there. Edward IV. was crowned in June, 1461, and from that time was really in possession of the throne, though the fighting was not yet over.

1. How old was Henry when he became king?
2. What shepherd-girl delivered France?
3. What was her fate?
4. What are the Civil Wars of this reign called—and why?
5. What was the Duke of York's claim?
6. What happened at the battle of Wakefield Green?
7. Which party was victorious at Towton?

HOUSE OF YORK.

CHAPTER XXII.

EDWARD IV. (1461—1483).

1. AFTER Edward IV. had reigned two years, the Lancastrian party again raised an army, but they were completely routed at Hexham in Northumberland. The unfortunate Henry was taken prisoner, and treated with great insolence. In the same year Edward married Elizabeth Woodville, an elegant, accomplished lady, the young widow of Sir John Grey, who had been killed in battle.

2. Edward's marriage with a lady so much beneath him in rank gave great offence to one of his supporters, the Earl of Warwick. The Earl was the more displeased because by Edward's orders he had asked for a princess of Savoy to be his queen. This nobleman was so powerful, that people called him "the kingmaker." Now he and Edward quarrelled; and at last the Earl of Warwick was commanded to leave the kingdom.

3. He obeyed, and went to France; but he was very, very angry. He wished to do all in his power to injure the king, and therefore he offered to help Margaret and her son. In 1471 he entered England with a strong army, and Edward was obliged to fly to Holland for a while, but he soon returned, and a battle was fought at Barnet, in which the Earl of Warwick and his brother were killed.

4. Margaret thus lost her ablest helper. She landed at Plymouth on the day of his death, and though depressed at first when she heard of it, yet she soon recovered her courage, and five days after the battle of Barnet, another took place at Tewkesbury, where Margaret was utterly and hopelessly defeated, and herself and her son taken prisoners.

5. Her son was brought before King Edward, who asked him how he dared to come to England with an army. The brave boy boldly replied that he came to win his father's crown, and that he was right in doing so. Edward was angry at this answer, and he cruelly struck the young prince; and then some of those around him brutally murdered the poor lad.

6. You will suppose from this act that Edward was cruel, and so he was. After the battle of Tewkesbury he put many persons to death with barbarity and deception, as he had done before, since his reign began. Margaret remained a prisoner for five years, and then the King of France paid Edward a ransom to set her free, and she lived in France until her death.

7. Not long after this battle Henry VI. died in prison, and many persons thought that he was murdered by Edward's brother, the Duke of Gloucester; but there is no proof of this. A little later, Edward had his own brother, the Duke of Clarence, privately put to death; so you will not wonder that I call him cruel. Clarence had been faithless and fickle in his conduct towards the king; but it was a slight quarrel at last which led Edward to give the horrible order for his brother's death.

8. With the battle of Tewkesbury ended the Wars

of the Roses. There had often been terrible cruelty on both sides. When year after year the country was filled with strife and bloodshed, when near relations were sometimes fighting against one another, people often became very savage. Then there were fathers who had had all their sons killed, and brothers who had seen their brothers slain before their eyes, and in many hearts awoke a desire for revenge, which helped yet more to drench the land with blood.

9. There was a Lancastrian nobleman, named Lord Clifford, whose father fell at the battle of St. Alban's by the hand of the Duke of York, Edward the Fourth's father. From that time a terrible spirit of vengeance possessed Lord Clifford, and on one occasion he was so merciless that people called him "the butcher."

10. After an engagement in which the Duke of York was defeated, his little son, the Earl of Rutland, only twelve years old, was flying from the field with a priest who was his tutor, when Lord Clifford overtook them. The good priest implored him to have mercy on the boy, who knelt before him, but the pitiless Clifford cried, "The son of York! thy father slew mine! I will slay thee and all thy kin!" and he stabbed the poor child to the heart.

11. Lord Clifford afterwards perished in battle; and when the Lancastrian king was utterly ruined, his wife was dreadfully alarmed for the safety of her little son, who was only seven years old; so she resolved to hide him where Edward IV. could not find him. There was a shepherd in Yorkshire, who had married the child's nurse, and to their care she entrusted him.

Edward searched for him in vain; he was no match for the poor mother's watchful love.

12. The shepherd and his wife most faithfully protected him. They treated him exactly as if he had been their own child, and sent him out on the hills to take care of the sheep, as if he had been born a shepherd-boy, instead of a young nobleman. At the age of thirty-one, when Henry VII. was king, all his estates were given back to him, and he was called by his rightful title of Lord Clifford. He married, and on one occasion, at least, fought for his sovereign, but he rarely came into public, and after a retired and exemplary life, died at the age of seventy-two.

13. Just as these dreadful wars of the Roses were over, a new invention was brought to England. It was one of those gracious discoveries which God has permitted men to make, and which are meant to help them to be wiser and better. This invention was the art of printing. You can hardly understand what a precious gift this was. Before printing was known, all books were written by the hand with pen and ink, and this was such slow work, that books were very scarce and very dear.

14. In those days, poor men could not afford to buy them; nor were they able to read. But when printing was invented, the number of books began by degrees to increase, and knowledge was carried by them far and wide. The name of the man who bestowed this great boon on England was William Caxton, who was born in Kent, about 1412. He settled in London as a merchant, and after a time went on business to the Netherlands.

15. The art of printing was already known there and in Germany, and when Caxton saw a printing-press he felt what a blessing it would be to England if books could be printed there. He therefore learnt how to work a printing press; and by-and-by he returned home, and established himself near Westminster Abbey, and the first book that he printed in England was one about the game of chess. And he followed this with many more.

16. William Caxton was a good and clever man, but he hardly knew himself what a wonderful discovery this art of printing was. The poorest child who can read, and the wisest man living, are indebted to it. When we see how it is spreading knowledge and wisdom to the ends of the earth, let us remember the little printing office at Westminster, where William Caxton nobly and patiently toiled for the good of his countrymen.

17. Edward the Fourth's reign was ended by his death in 1483. He has been described as "cruel, faithless, merciless, and lawless," very unlike his gallant generous father, the Duke of York. In this reign none but the royal family were allowed to wear silks of a purple colour; and a very curious and inconvenient fashion prevailed of having shoes made with long pointed toes turning upwards.

1. Who was taken prisoner at the battle of Hexham; and what became of him?
2. Where were the Lancastrians hopelesly defeated?
3. What became of Margaret and her son?
4. Who was the Duke of Clarence, and what was his fate?
5. What great invention was introduced into England?
6. Who brought it here?

CHAPTER XXIII.

EDWARD V. (1483). RICHARD III. (1483—1485).

1. EDWARD IV. left a wife and several children, most of them daughters. There were, however, two sons, Edward, who then became king, a boy of thirteen, and Richard, Duke of York, who was only eleven. At the time of Edward the Fourth's death his young son and heir was at Ludlow Castle, under the care of his mother's brother, Lord Rivers, and his own half-brothers, the Lord Dorset and Lord Richard Grey, his mother's sons by her former marriage.

2. Edward the Fourth's brother, Richard, Duke of Gloucester, a bad, cruel man, was made protector of the kingdom, and took an oath of loyalty to his nephew, Edward V. He was fighting in Scotland at the time of his brother's death, but immediately hastened southwards. Lord Rivers, who did not think of any danger, came with the little king to meet him.

3. The Lords Rivers, Dorset, and Richard Grey, loved the young Edward, and meant to protect him. Therefore the Duke of Gloucester wished to get them out of the way, so he accused them of trying to make Edward dislike him, and on this pretence he confined the three noblemen as prisoners. Many of the nobility were jealous of the power given to the queen's relations, and for this reason were less displeased at Richard's conduct than they would otherwise have been.

4. Poor Edward wept, and was in great distress

when the uncle and half-brothers, who were very kind to him, were taken away, and he was left to his other uncle Gloucester, whom he disliked and feared. When his mother heard of these things she fled from her palace, and took refuge in Westminster Abbey, and there upon the floor, which was strewn with rushes, she sat down "desolate and dismayed."

5. Meanwhile Richard of Gloucester brought the little king in state to London, and placed him in the Tower. Then he induced the queen to give up the young Duke of York, and brought him there also; so that both the little princes were in his power. The Duke of Gloucester had made up his mind to wear the crown of England, and he now prepared, as one step towards his object, to murder those who were likely to befriend his royal nephews.

6. On the 13th of June, Gloucester held a council in the Tower, and there began to quarrel with the Lord Hastings, and at last he declared that he would not dine till he had seen him beheaded. Hastings was hurried out on a little green within the walls of the Tower, and there without any trial he was executed. That very day the Lords Rivers, Dorset, and Richard Grey were put to death at Pontefract Castle.

7. In the same month Gloucester caused himself to be proclaimed king, by the title of Richard III. For a few days or weeks longer Edward and his little brother remained in that strong and gloomy fortress, the Tower of London, from which they were to go out no more, for Gloucester was resolved to murder them, and add one more horrible crime to those which he had already committed.

8. One night when the princely boys were sleeping calmly in each other's arms, two wretched men, sent by their cruel uncle, entered the chamber when all was dark and still, and smothered them with the bed-clothes as they lay. Then they buried them at the foot of the stairs "under a great heap of stones," where long years afterwards their bones were found.

9. Edward V. had only reigned about three months. He had known nothing of royalty but its trials, and from these he was soon released. He and his brother early ended their pure young lives, and passed away from a troubled kingdom and stormy times, from

> "A crown with thorns beset—
> Now they've life unscathed by woe,
> And a glorious crown in that blessed land
> Where little children go."

10. Richard III. did not long keep the crown which he had won by such atrocious crimes. The nation became disgusted with him, and very soon another person appeared to claim the throne. This was Henry, Earl of Richmond, who was descended from Edward the Third's son, John of Gaunt, and therefore belonged, like Henry VI., to the family of Lancaster.

11. There were, however, persons then living who were more nearly related to John of Gaunt than Richmond was; so that his real claim was founded on the fact that the parliament and people of England wished to have him for their king. He sailed from France and landed at Milford Haven in Pembrokeshire with about two thousand men.

12. He was soon joined by many more, and with

his troops increased to six thousand he marched to meet Richard. The two armies engaged at Bosworth Field, in Leicestershire. The battle lasted for two hours, and was decided by Lord Stanley, who had professed to be Richard's friend, going over with all his followers to Richmond's side. Richard fought bravely, but was entirely defeated, and at last he was slain in the thickest of the fight. His crown, stained with blood, was found upon the field, and Lord Stanley placed it on Richmond's head, and cried—"Long live King Henry."

13. So ended Richard the Third's brief wicked reign of two years, in 1485. He has been described as deformed in appearance; but there seems no truth in this account. On the contrary, though one shoulder was higher than the other, it is believed that he was quite a handsome man. He was the last king of the royal line of Plantagenet, of which Henry II. was the first.

14. I will here tell you a little of the habits and manners of the people of England about this time. The nobility and gentry rose about four in the morning, breakfasted at seven, dined at ten, supped at four, and had a smaller meal in bed, between eight and nine. Dinner was laid out on a great oak table in the hall. There would be huge joints of fresh and salted beef, and other dishes. Plenty to eat, though some of the food was rather coarse, and the arrangements rather rough.

15. The master of the house sat at the top of the table, with his chair on a part of the floor that was raised. The salt was placed somewhere near the

middle of the table, and the noblemen and gentlemen sat above it, and those of lower birth below it. The hawks, meanwhile, would perch on the rafters over their masters' heads, and the dogs would lie at their feet, or somewhere on the floor.

1. How many sons did Edward IV. leave?
2. Who got them in his power and resolved to be king?
3. What was their fate?
4. Who claimed Richard the Third's crown?
5. What battle did they fight, and what was its result?
6. Of what royal line was Richard the last?

Period the Third.

THE TUDOR LINE

(1485—1603.)

THE TUDOR LINE.

Henry VII.	1485—1509
Henry VIII.	1509—1547
Edward VI.	1547—1553
Mary	1553—1558
Elizabeth	1558—1603

CHAPTER XXIV.

HENRY VII. (1486—1509).

1. HENRY of Richmond, the first sovereign of the family of Tudor, was crowned king by the title of Henry VII. He married Elizabeth, daughter of Edward IV., and sister of Edward V. As she belonged to the House of York, and Henry to the House of Lancaster, this marriage united the Red and White Roses, and put an end for ever to the long contest between the two families.

2. Among the members of the House of York who were still living, was the young Earl of Warwick, son of the murdered Duke of Clarence, and Henry cruelly imprisoned him in the Tower, fearing that he might try to obtain the throne. Soon afterwards some persons tried to cause a rebellion by bringing forward a tradesman's son, named Simnel, a handsome youth, and pretending that he was the Earl of Warwick.

3. As the earl was at that very time living in the Tower, it was easy to prove that Simnel could not be he. The unhappy Warwick was, by Henry's command, taken on horseback through the streets of London, that people might be convinced that Simnel was an impostor, who, not disheartened by his failure in England, went over to Ireland, where the House of Lancaster was much disliked.

4. There he raised an army of eight thousand men, with which he landed in Lancashire, and marched to Stoke, in Nottinghamshire, where he met Henry the

Seventh's troops, and an obstinate and bloody battle took place. Simnel was entirely routed, but Henry did not imprison him or put him to death. He made him a servant in the royal kitchen, and finding that he behaved well, after a time promoted him to take care of his falcons.

5. In 1493, another claimant to the throne appeared in Perkin Warbeck, who pretended to be the Duke of York, Edward the Fifth's little brother, and who said that when Edward was murdered in the Tower he had escaped. He found many persons ready to help him; perhaps the beauty of his face made some really believe that he was Edward the Fourth's son.

6. In Ireland he was warmly welcomed, and he was well received abroad, at the court of the Duchess of Burgundy, sister of Edward IV., who so hated the House of Lancaster, that she was willing to help any one against them. She sent Warbeck to Portugal, where he met with a kind reception. Henry VII. then became alarmed, and put to death several distinguished men who were attached to the House of York; he even had the base ingratitude to order the execution of Sir William Stanley, who had helped him to the throne.

7. In 1496, Warbeck tried to land at Deal, but was driven back by the men of Kent. Then he went to Scotland, where the king seemed to believe his story, and promised to assist him. There Warbeck married the Lady Catherine Gordon, a beautiful and gentle woman. After a time Warbeck again entered England, landing at Whitsand Bay in Cornwall; he

marched to Bodmin, in the same county, where he was proclaimed king.

8. There had just been a rebellion against Henry in Cornwall, and Warbeck found many persons inclined to help him. But after some useless fighting he appeared to lose all hope though he had still an army under his command, and fled for refuge to the monastery of Beaulieu, in Hampshire. At last, in despair, and seeing no chance of escape, he gave himself up as a prisoner to Henry.

9. At first he was treated mercifully by the king, and placed in the Tower, where the poor Earl of Warwick dragged on his weary life. But Warbeck naturally longed to be free, and he proposed to the earl that they should escape together. Their plan was discovered, and Warbeck was tried and executed. Two days later, the hapless Earl of Warwick was brought to trial, and he too was put to death.

10. This unhappy prince had been kept in a lonely prison for fifteen years. There he had no companions, no books, no amusement, no employment. It is hard to imagine any life more dreary and desolate. He had done no harm to any one, though Henry treated him in this most cruel manner. It was all because he had the misfortune to be the nephew of a king, and had a slight claim to the crown.

11. You will like to know what became of Warbeck's wife, the beautiful Lady Catherine, "the pale rose of England," as the people called her. She was faithful to her husband through all his troubles, and was at last taken prisoner by Henry, in St. Michael's Mount, where she had fled for safety. Though he

did not often show pity to others, yet he treated her kindly, and placed her in the queen's household. Later she became the wife of Sir Matthew Cradoc, and lived for many years after her marriage.

12. Henry VII. died in 1509, aged fifty-three; he left the kingdom, on the whole, in a prosperous condition; but he was extremely covetous, and gathered together large sums of money, often by the most disgraceful means. Two men, named Empson and Dudley, rendered themselves notorious for the assistance which they gave the king in his efforts to extort money from his subjects.

13. In his reign America was discovered. Until then it was not known that that quarter of the world existed. The discoverer was Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa. People at that time generally believed that the world was a flat plain, but Columbus felt sure that it was round, and in that case he knew that he could reach India by sailing to the west.

14. When he spoke of the world being round, ignorant people laughed at him, for ignorant people very commonly think those things ridiculous which they have not the sense to understand. Isabella, the wise Queen of Spain, listened to Columbus, and told him that she would supply him with ships and money, that he might try to make this voyage.

15. He sailed from Europe with three small vessels. His sailors became discontented, and wanted to turn back because they were so long before reaching land. At last, in the night, they came near some of the beautiful West India Islands. They could not see the shore, but the fragrance of the sweet shrubs

and flowers growing in those sunny climes was borne by the land-breeze on board the vessels, and told them that the voyage was over.

16. Columbus at first supposed that these islands were part of India, and therefore he called them the West Indies. On his second voyage he discovered the great continent of America. Much astonishment was felt in Spain when he returned to tell what he had found; but he had to endure many trials after his great discovery. The good Queen Isabella always continued his friend; but neither she nor Columbus could prevent the poor natives of the new world from being treated with extreme cruelty.

17. Another great navigator in this reign was Sebastian Cabot, a native of Venice, who settled at Bristol, and was sent by Henry VII. on a voyage of discovery. He went as far north as Labrador, and as far south as Florida. There were rich mines of silver in some parts of America, and persons in Europe fancied that immense wealth could be obtained there.

18. Gentlemen in this reign often had the collars and wristbands of their shirts worked with silk. They wore a doublet, or sort of frock, reaching about to the knee, and sometimes a long coat, or robe, down to the feet, with open sleeves. They had caps of velvet or fur, with splendid feathers in them. They wore their hair long, and their faces shaved.

19. The ladies in Henry the Seventh's time used to wear on their heads nets of gold-work, their hair hanging down over their backs; but sometimes they wore turbans. They had very handsome girdles

round their waists, the ends of which hung nearly to their feet. The population of England at this time was not more than three millions, which is not far from the present population of London alone.

1. How were the Houses of York and Lancaster united?
2. What happened to the Earl of Warwick?
3. Whom did Simnel pretend to be, and what became of him?
4. Give some account of Perkin Warbeck?
5. What vast country was discovered, and by whom?
6. What was the population of England?

CHAPTER XXV.

HENRY VIII. (1509—1547).

1. HENRY VII. was succeeded by his son, Henry VIII., in 1509. He was young, clever, handsome, energetic, and popular with his subjects, who expected great things from him. His reign began brilliantly, but the fair promise of his youth was early crushed. Henry VIII. became at last cruel, selfish and wilful, though it is possible that he was not entirely to blame for much that is usually laid to his charge.

2. In 1511, he entered into a war with France, and two years later with Scotland. The Scottish king at that time was James IV., a brave but imprudent prince, whose wife was a sister of Henry VIII. This war is rendered memorable by the battle of Flodden Field, which was fought on the 7th of September, 1513.

3. The Earl of Surrey commanded the English army, and James himself led the Scottish troops. It was a terrible battle. The English won the victory

at last, and cold and dead upon that gory plain lay James IV. and scores of the first noblemen and gentlemen of his kingdom, as well as a great number of the common soldiers.

4. Soon after the battle of Flodden Field, peace was made between England and France, and the French king married Henry's beautiful sister Mary, much against her will, she being nearly forty years younger than her husband. He died in a few weeks after his marriage, and then Mary became the wife of the young and gallant Duke of Suffolk, to whom she was strongly attached.

5. The new King of France, Francis I., was a youthful and brilliant prince. In 1520, Henry, with a great company of noble ladies and gentlemen, went to see Francis. They did not meet in any city, but out in the open country. There were splendid tents erected, and the whole scene was so very grand, that the place was called "the Field of the Cloth of Gold."

6. These tents were adorned inside with velvet and jewels, and worked hangings. The ropes which fastened one of them to the ground were made of blue silk and gold. All the French and English gentlemen and ladies were gorgeously dressed, and formed a dazzling assembly; and most of the time was passed in mock fights, or, as they were called, tournaments, and in other games, and in holding splendid feasts.

7. One of Henry's party on this occasion was Cardinal Wolsey, a very remarkable man, who had great power in the early part of this reign. He was the son of a butcher at Ipswich, but he received an

excellent education, being sent to the University of Oxford, where he made great progress in learning.

8. He entered the Church, and rising from one step to another, was at last created a cardinal. There is only one person in the Roman Catholic Church higher in rank than a cardinal, and that is the pope. When a pope dies his successor is chosen from among the cardinals, of whom there are several.

9. Wolsey himself cultivated learning, and encouraged it in others. For a time he almost governed the country. While his power lasted he was very haughty and overbearing, and sometimes very oppressive and insolent; though he always treated his servants with kindness. Everything about him was grand and stately. He kept a train of 800 gentlemen in his household. His dress was splendid, even his shoes were adorned with jewels; and when he went to "the Field of the Cloth of Gold," the French gentlemen wondered at the crimson robes and gold chains which he wore.

10. Soon after Henry returned from France he cruelly put to death the Duke of Buckingham. This nobleman was descended from Edward III., and therefore related to the Royal Family. He was a generous, brave man, hospitable and liberal. For a few hasty words concerning the succession to the throne he was brought to trial, and condemned to die. The Duke of Norfolk, who passed the sentence, wept as he did so. Buckingham calmly said—"May the eternal God forgive you my death, as I do."

11. He would not ask mercy of the king. He knew that he was innocent of any crime, and there-

fore there was no need to implore forgiveness. They took him to Tower Hill to be beheaded, and there "he died as brave men die, firmly and meekly."

12. But it is time to leave these matters, and tell you about one of the most important events that had occurred for many years,—I mean the Reformation. That you may understand this, I will try to tell you a little about the early Christian Church. You know at the time of the Crucifixion the number of Christians was very small, though they rapidly increased in number.

13. Then persecution arose. Thousands of them were most cruelly put to death by their pagan enemies. You cannot imagine the horrible sufferings endured by these holy men and women of whom the world was not worthy. To be a Christian then often meant to part with friends, and home, and life itself—to give up all for Christ.

14. But about three hundred years after the Crucifixion, there was a Christian Emperor of Rome. Then it became fashionable to be a Christian. Bad men and careless men sometimes professed Christianity without caring anything about it; and already many corruptions had crept into the Church, which had early departed from its first purity.

15. The clergy alone were allowed to have Bibles. They were forbidden to other people, because it was said that they could not understand them without the help of the priests. There were, however, little bands of Christians among the lonely Alps, and elsewhere, who would never submit to this, and who were most terribly persecuted in consequence, but who still remained faithful to their belief.

16. But for many hundred years nearly all the Christians in the world were Roman Catholics, and all civilised Europeans called themselves Christians. There were many wicked men who were Christians only in name, but you must remember also that almost all the wise and good persons who lived then were Roman Catholics, and though many errors mixed with their religion, that was because they had never been taught better; and some of them were among the best and holiest of men.

17. In the reign of Henry VIII. one very bad practice of the Church of Rome was carried to a great extent. This was the sale of indulgences. By this was meant that if any one paid a sum of money to the Church he was told that he would be forgiven whatever sins he might commit during a certain time. There were persons so ignorant that they really thought that the pope had power to do this.

18. You will see that the Romish Church must have been fearfully corrupt before such a dreadful doctrine as buying forgiveness of sins with money could be publicly taught. There was indeed at that time a frightful amount of wickedness and impiety among the Romish clergy. There were many who sought high places in the church, from love of gold and power, who cared nothing about religion.

19. But of course there were many, many good people in the Romish Church who, while much evil was prevailing around them, were serving God faithfully, and doing His will as far as they knew it. If they often made mistakes, it was for want of good

teaching; and God will never punish mistakes made in ignorance.

20. There was living at this time in Germany a young man, named Martin Luther. His father was a poor miner, but seeing that his son was very clever, he struggled to send him to the university of Wittenberg, that he might become a learned man. Young Luther studied very hard, and astonished those around him by his talents. But though he greatly loved learning, there were thoughts which made him extremely unhappy.

21. He longed to feel that he was accepted in God's sight, and every sin forgiven. He was willing to bear any suffering, that he might receive pardon; and as he had been taught that it was pleasing to God for men to become monks, and live shut up in a convent, away from their friends and all the world, he resolved to become a monk.

22. This was a bitter sacrifice to him, for he knew that he might be a distinguished and famous man if he remained in the university; but he was willing to lose all to win eternal life. So he went to bury himself in the convent, hoping by fasting, and penances, and prayers, to find peace at last. But in vain. One day there came to the convent an eminent minister of his church, who talked to Luther, and told him that those things would never give him rest; that only Christ could forgive sins.

23. He also found a Bible in the library of the convent, and there he read much that was new to him. The more he read and thought, the more clearly he saw that the sale of indulgences was a fearfully wrong

custom; and he felt it his duty to enlighten others on this point. By degrees he began to see how opposed to the gospel of Christ were some other doctrines of the Roman Catholic Church, and against those he preached with all the powers of his great mind.

24. There were many who listened to his teaching. Some rich, some poor, some learned, and some ignorant heard him gladly, for he taught them Christ's own words. He told them that no pope, nor any one on earth could forgive sins; that none but God could do this, and that He was always ready to receive those who truly repented.

25. Luther's words and deeds made a great stir in the world; and at last, in 1521, he was summoned before a diet held in the city of Worms to answer for what he had said and done. A diet was a great assembly of all the princes of Germany, with the emperor at their head; for Germany was divided into many kingdoms, each ruled by a prince, and the emperor was over them all.

26. Luther's friends were afraid to let him go to Worms, thinking that he might be imprisoned, or even put to death; but he felt it was right for him to go, and he was too brave a man ever to shrink from doing his duty. There was one Psalm he loved so much that it is often called Luther's Psalm. It is the one beginning "God is our refuge and strength."

27. The emperor promised that Luther should be safe if he would come to Worms; and he kept his word, though bad men tried to make him break it. When Luther reached the city, throngs of people were waiting in the streets to see the monk who had

dared to brave pope and emperor. Before he was taken into the presence of the Diet he felt overwhelmed at the awfulness of his position, but he prayed for strength and peace, and they were given him.

28. Then he laid his left hand upon the Bible, and lifting his right hand to heaven, solemnly swore to make a full confession of faith at all risks; and calmly and bravely he went to stand before the diet. It was indeed a stately gathering. There sat the mighty emperor Charles V.; there were all the princes who ruled the different German states; there were many archbishops and bishops, and messengers from the pope; and noblemen from most of the countries of Europe.

29. And before all this power and grandeur, before this vast assembly in their gorgeous robes and jewels, Luther stood alone with none to help him—

"A simple monk of Wittenberg—an honest miner's son:"

yet he never quailed. He knew that some who were present hated him, and were longing to have him put to death, but he knew too that One mightier than all of them was with him there.

30. Never did living man show more fearless courage than Luther did at Worms. Hour after hour he stood before his royal judges, answering the questions that were put to him, and clearly explaining his views. At last the sun set, and when darkness came on, the hall was lighted up with torches, whose strong blaze showed more plainly the worn face and kindling eye of Luther, as he finished by saying that he neither could nor would deny what he believed to be the truth. Looking round upon

them all he added, "Here I stand; I can do no otherwise; God help me! Amen!"

31. With these bold words a mighty work was done. Luther and those who agreed with him were called Protestants, because of the protest or objection which they made to the errors of the Roman Catholics; and the great change which they caused in that portion of the church which followed them is called the Reformation. In the next chapter we shall see how this affected our own country.

1. What battle did Henry fight with the Scotch, and who won it?
2. What king perished there?
3. Who was Cardinal Wolsey?
4. Name the religious revolution of this period.
5. Who was its leader?
6. Why were the Reformers called Protestants?

CHAPTER XXVI.

HENRY VIII. (CONTINUED).

1. HENRY VIII. wrote a book in which he attacked Luther's opinions, and for this act the pope gave the English monarch the title of "Defender of the Faith." But they soon quarrelled; and this was the cause:—Henry had married his brother's widow, Catherine of Arragon, who was older than himself, and she had now been his faithful wife for many years. She had only one daughter, and this was a great trial to Henry, who was very anxious to have a son to succeed him.

2. Among the maids of honour who waited on the queen was a beautiful young lady named Anne

Boleyn, and Henry so admired her that he wished to make her his wife. He said that his conscience was uneasy because he had married his brother's widow, and he asked the pope to allow him to divorce Catherine of Arragon, that she might no longer be his wife.

3. One cannot help thinking that Henry's wishes influenced him much more than his conscience. However that may be, the pope was not willing to grant his request, for Catherine was the aunt of the emperor Charles V. of whom you read in the last chapter; and the pope did not want to displease him, so he delayed coming to a decision as long as possible.

4. Cardinal Wolsey wished to keep on good terms both with the king and the pope, but he soon offended his royal master, and the ungrateful Henry resolved to ruin him. Wolsey was arrested at York by a troop of soldiers, who had orders to bring him to London. When they set off he was already ill, and the fatigue of the journey, combined with distress of mind, rendered his disease fatal.

5. He never reached London. They stopped at the Abbey of Leicester for him to rest, and to one of the monks who met him he said—"Father Abbot, I have come to lay my bones among you." He knew that he was dying, and he was sorely troubled when he remembered the many misdeeds of which he had been guilty, to increase his own power and to please Henry.

6. His last sad words were—"Had I but served God as diligently as I have served the king, He would not have given me over in my grey hairs."

And then he died. He would have been a far happier as well as a far better man if he had felt like this during his life; but we may hope that his sorrow for the past was not in vain, for God never scorns repentance.

7. The pope still hesitated about the divorce, but Henry would wait no longer. In May, 1533, the marriage between Henry VIII. and Catherine was dissolved by Archbishop Cranmer, and Anne Boleyn became Henry's wife and England's queen. From this time there could be no friendship or peace between the pope and Henry VIII.

8. The king had some laws passed, by which it was declared that the pope had no authority over him, nor any right to interfere with the government of England. These were most wise and useful measures, though Henry probably did not care about their being right. He was furious with the pope, and wished to vex him as much as possible.

9. It was just at this time that Henry put to death the excellent Bishop Fisher, and the wise, learned, and admirable Sir Thomas More. Both these good men were Roman Catholics, and conscientiously refused to take some oaths which the king ordered them to swear. Bishop Fisher was first executed, and then Sir Thomas More was tried and condemned to die.

10. As he was led back to the Tower after his trial, his favourite daughter, Margaret, waited to see him, and when he came near she forced her way through the crowd of soldiers that surrounded him, threw her arms about his neck and kissed him, while

he gave her his blessing. Then she turned to go away, but remembering that she might never see him any more she ran back and kissed him "most lovingly" many times.

11. Sir Thomas More was not at all afraid to die. He knew that there was a happier, better world beyond the grave, and he did not mind reaching heaven by way of the scaffold. He spoke brave, pleasant words, to the last moment, and then laid his head upon the block as cheerfully as though it were a pillow.

12. His death roused a burst of indignation through all Europe. It was known that he had died because he would not say what was untrue. He might have saved his life by speaking a few words, but he would not speak them, for he felt that it was better far to die than to be false to God and to his conscience.

13. He was a devout Roman Catholic, and Luther was the great leader of the Protestants, and they said and wrote many most bitter and violent things of one another. Nevertheless both of them were among the bravest soldiers of the cross, though they were not perfect, and could not understand each other here.

14. Soon the scaffold was made ready for another victim; and this time it was the young and beautiful queen Anne Boleyn, whom Henry had professed to love so dearly, who was put to death. This is as true as it is horrible. He was charmed with another beautiful lady, Jane Seymour, and he cared for Anne no longer, but accused her of being unfaithful to him, and of having acted very wickedly.

15. Anne was a vain, thoughtless, unamiable woman, who had passed her time in gaieties with which her stern husband had no sympathy, and perhaps had acted foolishly and unbecomingly. Still it is the general, though not universal, belief that she was guiltless of the charge brought against her by the king. Henry was tired of her, and wanted to get rid of her, so he was ready to believe all the falsehoods that wicked people told of her.

16. She defended herself most ably at her trial; and when she was condemned to die she listened with a calm face, and then, clasping her hands together, looked towards heaven and exclaimed—"Oh Father of mankind! the way, the life, and the truth, Thou knowest whether I have deserved this death." She had been overwhelmed with distress when she was first imprisoned, but she soon grew quiet and self-possessed.

17. She was only twenty-seven, and a little while before she had been caressed and admired, and had lived in wealth and luxury. Now a helpless prisoner, she was no longer the weak, careless woman she had once been. She was dignified and courageous, though the remembrance of her little baby must have made her poor heart ache.

18. When she came on the scaffold she showed no fear, though many persons who stood by were moved to tears. Her last words were—"Christ, I pray Thee, receive my spirit." Then her graceful head with its long tresses, on which a crown had so lately pressed, was severed from her beautiful shoulders, and her troubles were over. Her brother

and four other persons were executed about the same time.

19. Her brutal husband at once married Jane Seymour, who lived little more than a year after her marriage, dying at the birth of her first child, afterwards Edward VI. Henry's next wife was a German princess, Anne of Cleves. He never saw her until she came to England to be married to him, and had been greatly deceived respecting her attractions. He never liked her, and in six months they separated. She lived for sixteen years afterwards, with an income of £3000 a-year, probably rejoiced to be so easily rid of such a husband.

20. Henry's fifth wife was the Lady Catherine Howard. In a little while he heard such an account of her disgraceful conduct before her marriage, that he determined to part from her; but he was not satisfied with that; like a tyrant as he was, he resolved that she should die, and she was executed.

21. His sixth and last wife was Catherine Parr. His own life was now fast drawing to a close. He was dreadfully diseased, and suffered much pain. Once Catherine Parr was in great danger because she dared to differ from his opinions. He prepared to send her to prison, but she contrived to pacify him, and took care not to argue with him any more.

22. Just before his death, and when he was in a miserable state of body, so ill that perhaps it was not his order at all, another distinguished man perished on the scaffold. This was the Earl of Surrey, a most accomplished gentleman. He was a poet, statesman, and soldier. He was accused of high treason, which

means an attempt to destroy the life or liberty of the king.

23. Surrey had not made any attempt of the kind, but for all that he was executed. His father, the Duke of Norfolk, was also condemned to die on the 28th of January, but the night before Henry breathed his last. He died in time to prevent the death of the grey-haired duke, but not soon enough to save his gallant son, who was beheaded about a week earlier.

24. Henry VIII. died in January, 1547, in the thirty-fifth year of his reign, and fifty-sixth of his age. He had begun life with many advantages. Little did his people then think that the accomplished, handsome, merry king would be a selfish, cruel tyrant before his reign was over. Still it must be owned that some of his measures contributed largely to the welfare of the nation. He left three children—Mary, Catherine of Arragon's daughter; Elizabeth, the child of Anne Boleyn; and Edward, the son of Jane Seymour.

25. It was about this time that looking-glasses were first used in England. Hitherto, little plates of polished steel were the only mirrors that people had. The gentry generally breakfasted at eight, dined at twelve, and supped at six. At all their meals they usually drank ale, and ate beef or mutton. At dinner they would also have hares and fowls, and many other dishes, and wines. In a nobleman's house the dining table would be set out in a great hall, at which he and his family and his friends would dine; while there would be other tables in the same hall where the upper servants took their dinner at the same time as their master.

26. The wife of a wealthy tradesman is described as being dressed "in a fair train gown, stuck full of silver pins, and a white cap and white apron. Her maids wore red petticoats, white handkerchiefs on their heads, and white sleeves."

1. What led to the quarrel between the king and the pope?
2. How did it affect the Pope's position as regards England?
3. Who was Sir Thomas More?
4. What became of Anne Boleyn?
5. Whom did Henry marry afterwards?
6. How many children did Henry leave, and who were their mothers?

CHAPTER XXVII.

EDWARD VI. (1547—1553.)

1. HENRY THE EIGHTH'S successor was his only son, Edward VI. The royal boy was little more than nine years old when he was proclaimed king in 1547. The Duke of Somerset, who was his uncle, being the brother of Jane Seymour, was declared protector or ruler of the kingdom, during the minority of his nephew, that is until he was twenty-one.

2. The Reformation was now fully established in England, but I am sorry to say that few persons had then learnt how wrong and shameful it is to persecute those who hold different religious opinions from their own. Some Roman Catholics were imprisoned in Edward the Sixth's reign, because they could not conscientiously agree with the alterations in the church. Among these was Gardiner, Bishop of Winchester.

3. Bonner, Bishop of London, a violent, cruel man,

of whom you will hear again, obtained release from prison by making a cowardly submission to those in power. Tunstall, the good Bishop of Durham, was not allowed to take any part in the government, simply because he was a Roman Catholic. But on the whole, this reign began hopefully. Many of Henry's tyrannical practices were put an end to, and the boy-king was gentle, teachable, and intelligent.

4. After Henry the Eighth's death, his widow, Catherine Parr, married Sir Thomas Seymour, a brother of the Duke of Somerset. She was not happy, for Seymour was not at all a good man, but she died very soon after her marriage. Seymour was jealous of his brother's power, and it seems that he tried to form a party against Somerset, in order that he might share the protector's authority, and have the management of the young king.

5. It appears that Seymour's plot could not possibly be considered treason, though it might have ended in that. But this unhappy nobleman was imprisoned in the Tower, and without being allowed to say a word in his own defence was sentenced to death—his brother Somerset actually taking part in the trial, and signing the warrant for his execution. Seymour was beheaded in 1548.

6. A rebellion in Cornwall, and another in Norfolk, made the protector busy for some time; but he had many enemies who were trying to ruin him. At the head of these was the Duke of Northumberland. At last Somerset was stripped of his authority and sent to the Tower, where he had before imprisoned his poor brother.

7. He was brought to an unfair trial, and unjustly condemned to die. He was beheaded on the 22nd of January, 1552, and met his fate with dignity. He was executed in London, on Tower Hill, the place where, four years earlier, his brother Seymour had died by his orders.

8. There was no one now to interfere with the Duke of Northumberland. He continued to persecute the Roman Catholics; the Bishops Gardiner and Bonner were sent to prison, where they remained till the king's death. But though the members of the Romish Church were thus ill-treated, it is fair to remember that no Roman Catholic was put to death on account of his religion, in Edward the Sixth's reign.

9. There was one poor woman, however, not a Roman Catholic, brutally burnt to death because of the doctrines which she held. She was called Joan of Kent; some suppose she was deranged. The king was very unwilling to sign the warrant for her execution, and when at last he wrote his name, he said to Archbishop Cranmer, with tears in his eyes—"If I do wrong, since it was in submission to your authority, you must answer for it to God."

10. In 1553, Edward's health began to fail, and after awhile it became plain that he was not likely to recover, and people began to ask who was to be his successor. He had two half-sisters, Mary and Elizabeth. Mary, who was now about thirty-seven, was the daughter of Henry the Eighth's first wife, Catherine of Arragon. She had deeply felt her mother's wrongs, and the recollection of them in-

creased the natural gloom and harshness of her temper.

11. She was a bigoted Roman Catholic, and was annoyed and harassed by Northumberland and others because of her religion. This treatment naturally made the Princess Mary cling the more closely to her own faith, and added to her hatred of the Protestants. The Princess Elizabeth, now about twenty-one, was the child of Anne Boleyn. She was a Protestant, and the young king was very fond of her.

12. Now the mother of one of these ladies had been divorced, and the mother of the other executed; and Henry VIII., when he grew tired of their poor mothers, made a law that neither of the princesses should ever reign. But for all that they were his children, and if Edward VI. died, were the nearest to the throne. But Northumberland and others decided that they could not reign.

13. Next to them came their cousin, Lady Jane Grey. She was only sixteen, very good, very beautiful, and very learned. She was married to Lord Guildford Dudley, the son of Northumberland. Edward felt that his illness was a mortal one, and after appointing Lady Jane Grey to be his successor, he died, in July, 1553, at the age of sixteen. He had shown much amiability and intelligence in his short life, and miserable were the consequences of his early death.

14. England during this reign was powerful and prosperous. In those days, wherever there was a difference of religion there was sure to be persecution. This was sad and very wrong; but few persons saw then how wicked and foolish it was to persecute

people for their religious opinions, for which they are only answerable to God and their own consciences.

15. We ought to be very thankful that we have been taught better; but have no reason to boast that in three hundred years we have learnt a little wisdom. During Edward the Sixth's reign there were many Roman Catholics oppressed because of their faith, yet probably during his life there was less religious persecution in England than in any other part of Europe.

16. As soon as the Princess Mary heard of her brother's death, she wrote to the Council, solemnly declaring that the crown belonged to her. The Council replied that Lady Jane was the lawful queen, and that they were resolved to support her. When the Duke of Northumberland informed Lady Jane that she was to be sovereign of England, she was overcome with distress, and fainted away.

17. On recovering she implored her father-in-law and the other lords not to make her queen. She said that both Mary and Elizabeth had a better claim to the throne than herself. Northumberland was an ambitious man; he wished Lady Jane to be queen, because she was his daughter-in-law, and he and others told her that it was her duty to accept the crown.

18. She wished to do what was right, and being very young, she yielded to the judgment of those who were much older than herself, and most unwillingly submitted to become a queen. You will ask perhaps which was sovereign by right—Mary or Jane? There is no doubt that Mary had the better claim; but Lady

Jane was not at all to blame for her share in this matter. She obeyed the commands of her father, and father-in-law, thinking that they must know better than she did.

19. Northumberland was much disliked in the country, and while Mary was raising an army he acted with weakness and hesitation. Some of Mary's friends proclaimed her in London, and took possession of the Tower. The Lady Jane was told that her brief reign of ten days was over. She joyfully heard the news, which was more welcome to her than the summons which had called her to a throne.

1. Who was declared Protector?
2. What became of him and his brother?
3. Into whose hands did the government then pass?
4. Whom did he place on the throne when Edward died?
5. Who was the rightful heir?
6. How long did Lady Jane reign?

CHAPTER XXVIII.

MARY. (1553—1558).

1. THE Princess Mary, daughter of Henry VIII., and Catherine of Arragon, became undisputed Queen of England in 1553, at the age of thirty-seven. One of her first acts was to liberate several noblemen and gentlemen who had been committed to the Tower by her enemies. She imprisoned Lady Jane's own father for a few days, and then pardoned him.

2. Lady Jane's father-in-law, Northumberland, was convicted of high treason, and executed with two other gentlemen. Laws were almost immediately passed, to prepare the way for the restoration of the

Roman Catholic Church in England; the bishops, who had been deprived of their offices because of their religion, were replaced.

3. Very soon the queen's marriage was discussed; and her mind inclined to Philip II., King of Spain, son of Mary's first cousin. Philip was a bigoted Roman Catholic, and a harsh, base, bitterly cruel man. The people of England were alarmed and displeased at the idea of his becoming the husband of their queen, and the House of Commons sent her an address, begging her to choose an Englishman instead of the Spanish prince.

4. Mary was offended at this, and persisted in her intention of marrying Philip. But the nation still hated and feared the match, and with good reason. So great was the objection, that it led to a revolt against the queen. It was headed by Sir Thomas Wyatt, a brave, spirited, and very young man. He was assisted by the Duke of Suffolk, Lady Jane's father.

5. Wyatt advanced towards London, with fifteen thousand men. The queen and her friends were terribly frightened. The fight began in London. Wyatt acted with great bravery, but his troops were killed, or defeated, and he was taken prisoner, and afterwards executed. In a little while Mary was guilty of an act which would leave an everlasting stain upon her name, even if she had done nothing else that was bad. I mean the execution of the lovely Lady Jane and her husband, Lord Guilford Dudley.

6. Just before her death Lady Jane sent a letter to her father in which she says, "My guiltless blood

may cry before the Lord, mercy to the innocent!" The last words she wrote were these, "If my fault deserve punishment, my youth, at least, and my imprudence, were worthy of excuse. God and posterity will show me favour."

7. It was on the 12th of February, 1554, that the good, gentle, gifted Lady Jane and her beloved husband were put to death. Strongly as they were attached to each other, she would not see him on the morning of that day, fearing that the anguish of a last parting would overcome them both, and unnerve them in the hour of death. Lord Guildford was beheaded first, and then the Lady Jane.

8. On the scaffold she said that her "soul was as pure from trespass against Queen Mary as innocence was from injustice: I only consented to the thing I was forced into." A few days after she and her young husband had thus perished, her father, the Duke of Suffolk, was executed. His fate did not excite much pity, for it was felt that he had shown great ingratitude to Queen Mary, who had once spared his life.

9. Mary's half-sister, the Princess Elizabeth, was accused of being concerned in Wyatt's rebellion, and was brought a prisoner to London, and committed to the Tower. It was quite certain that she had taken no active part in the rebellion, but some of Mary's counsellors were so wicked as to advise her being executed; and for a long time Elizabeth lived in expectation that she should perish on the scaffold. She remembered Lady Jane Grey's fate, and did not look for mercy from Queen Mary.

10. This same year Mary was married to Philip II. of Spain, as cruel and despicable a man as the world has ever seen. A few months later the Roman Catholic religion was formally restored in England; and the next year began a dreadful persecution of the Protestants. Hooper, bishop of Gloucester, and a clergyman named Rogers, were the first of a long and holy train of martyrs who in the reign of Queen Mary submitted to barbarous deaths for conscience sake.

11. Rogers was burnt at Smithfield, in London. On his way to the stake he met his beloved wife and his ten children, who came to see him for the last time. When he had parted from them he went on to Smithfield, where, borne up by his faith in Christ, he heroically endured the torture of the flames, and passed triumphantly away to heaven.

12. Bishop Hooper's martyrdom took place at Gloucester. At the last moment he was offered a pardon if he would become a Roman Catholic, but he steadfastly refused. Then the piles of wood around him were set on fire, but the awful agony he suffered could not shake his trust. He bore all with unshrinking firmness until death released him, and the faithful spirit found its eternal rest.

13. A few months after Hooper and Rogers had perished, two more distinguished witnesses for the truth were put to death. Ridley, bishop of Oxford, and Latimer, bishop of Worcester, were condemned to suffer together. They were both very good, brave men. Latimer was aged, being at least eighty years old, and was remarkable for the simplicity of his manners. Ridley was noted for his learning.

14. At the place of execution the venerable Latimer, who before had been infirm and ill, stood by the stake like a strong, vigorous man, saying to bishop Ridley—"Be of good cheer, brother; we shall this day kindle such a torch in England as I trust in God shall never be extinguished." The fire was lighted, the crackling flames ascended, and at last smouldering ashes only marked the spot where they had stood.

15. I cannot conclude these dreadful accounts without telling you of the execution of Archbishop Cranmer. He was committed to the Tower, because of his share in the proclamation of Lady Jane Grey. He was pardoned for this, but threatened with death unless he would change his religion. He knew that it was his duty to remain faithful to the Protestant faith, which he believed to be right; but he was weak and fearful, and he shrank from the horrors of death by fire. Perhaps most of us would have felt as timid.

16. At last he consented to renounce his faith for the sake of being spared, and signed a document to that effect. But this did not save him, and his enemies wished further to humiliate him by requiring him to recant publicly after the sermon preached before his execution. But when he rose among the clergy and the people at church he surprised all by deliberately avowing his real convictions, with sorrowful shame for his late weakness.

17. When he was brought to the stake he told the people, who stood pitying him, how greatly he mourned over his previous concession. He showed no fear or cowardice now; but sternly thrust his right hand, with which he had signed the paper, into the

fire, that it might burn first, exclaiming "This hand hath offended!"

18. Then, trusting in Christ, he patiently and humbly endured the bitter anguish of the flames. He was calm; for he had, with his dying breath, declared his return to the Protestant Church; and he felt sure that God had forgiven his unfaithfulness. "Lord, receive my spirit!" were his last words. It is thought that his death did more to overthrow the Roman Catholic Church in England than any other event.

19. I have not room to tell you of half the martyrs who were burnt to death in this reign. It is believed that about two hundred and ninety thus suffered; some of whom were rich and learned, some poor and ignorant, some men, some women, and a very few, it is said, were children. Besides these there were others executed in different ways. But they died "fearlessly, and often joyfully." And so had died both Protestants and Roman Catholics in the reign of Henry VIII., all worthy of everlasting honour as witnesses for what they believed to be truth.

20. You will ask, perhaps, whose doing it was that the Protestants were treated with such awful barbarity as I have described. I believe that the cruel Bonner, bishop of London, was the most guilty in the matter; but he could not have acted as he did without Queen Mary's leave. At first Bishop Gardiner took part in the persecution, but afterwards he would have nothing to do with it.

21. When Mary began her reign she probably never intended to allow these things, but she thought

that people could not go to heaven unless they were Roman Catholics, and that it was better their bodies should perish than their souls. In a word, she undertook to judge men's consciences, which is what God only can do, and you have seen what came of this mistake. It was thus that her short reign of five years was the most hateful in English history.

22. You must not suppose that all Roman Catholics approved of these fearful persecutions. Many of the Catholic bishops tried earnestly in their own districts to protect the Protestants, and often succeeded. The Queen's cousin, Cardinal Pole, whose mother was executed by Henry VIII., was made Archbishop of Canterbury after Cranmer's death. Pole hated the cruelties with which the Protestants were treated, but he did not resist Bonner and his party as he ought to have done.

23. Mary was not at all happy in her marriage, for Philip, though she loved him very much, treated her with neglect and coldness, and soon went back to his own kingdom of Spain. He began a war with France, and, to please him, Mary sent some troops to fight against the French. The town of Calais, in the north of France, which had belonged to England for two hundred years, was lost in this war, being taken by the French.

24. The English people were very angry at the loss of Calais, and the queen was exceedingly troubled too. Indeed she was very unhappy. She was grieved at her husband's unkindness, and her people's dislike, and no doubt she sometimes thought with horror of the cruelties she had allowed to be practised. Her

health had been declining for some time, and in 1588 she died, in the forty-third year of her age; and there was joy at her death.

25. A sadder, darker life than hers, is rarely seen. In her youth she was cruelly treated. After her mother's divorce she was forbidden to see her, though she loved her much; and she was constantly persecuted because she was a Roman Catholic. Perhaps she was gloomy and harsh by nature, and this treatment was not likely to improve her.

26. Yet Mary had some excellent qualities. She was a faithful friend, a good mistress, and kind to the poor. But her virtues were made quite useless by one awful error, the belief that she was doing the will of God by putting to death those who did not belong to her own church.

27. Let us ever remember this:—if we insult or annoy Roman Catholics, or any people whose religion is different from ours, because they do not agree with us, then we are showing a little bit of the spirit which made Queen Mary and bishop Bonner burn the Protestants. And if we let the same spirit rule in our hearts, perhaps, if we had lived three hundred years ago, we should have burnt people too. So let us all beware of the evil spirit of intolerance.

1. What laws affecting religion were passed at once?
2. What was the fate of Lady Jane Grey and her husband?
3. Mention the first two Protestant martyrs in this reign.
4. Name the two bishops who suffered at Oxford.
5. What were Latimer's last words?
6. Give some account of Archbishop Cranmer.

CHAPTER XXIX.

ELIZABETH. (1558—1603).

1. IN 1558, the Princess Elizabeth was proclaimed Queen of England, "amidst shouts of joy." She was brought from Hatfield, where for years she had lived as a kind of prisoner, to rule over her native land. Her reign was a glorious one. She mostly chose wise men for her counsellors; her government at home was vigorous, and the country prosperous; while she made the name of England feared and honoured abroad.

2. She was twenty-five when she began to reign; and was a truly great queen, very clever, and very learned, but not always pleasing. She was often most courteous and gracious to her people, with whom she was very popular; but sometimes, when she was angry, she showed a harhness and roughness very disagreeable in any one, especially in a woman. Indeed she had some great faults, but in spite of them all England may well be proud of her.

3. On the day of her coronation, when she passed in grand procession through the streets of London, her subjects thronged about her carriage, showing in every way their joy and love, while she received their homage with winning grace, and said—"I thank you, my good people." She was not exactly beautiful, but still a charming-looking lady, tall, elegant, and stately, with fine eyes and a face full of intelligence.

4. She kept many Roman Catholics in her council, adding to them several Protestant gentlemen. Among the latter was Lord Burleigh, who continued to be

her adviser till his death, and who was, on the whole, a wise and great statesman. All through her life Elizabeth was surrounded by clever and able men, who helped her with their counsel, and who were proud to be her servants.

5. It was her way to make little journeys to some of the principal towns, and to pay visits at the houses of the nobility and gentry. This was very pleasant to the people, who dearly liked to see their queen, and show their love to her; and the owners of the grand houses where she used to stay were much gratified at her presence, and used to make most splendid entertainments to welcome her.

6. As soon as Elizabeth became queen she restored the Protestant religion, which was the faith of most of her subjects. The Roman Catholic bishops, and some others of the clergy, were deprived of their offices, but were on the whole treated with mildness. Indeed, Elizabeth received all the bishops courteously except Bonner, on whom she looked with loathing, and sent him to prison.

7. I do not mean that she treated the Roman Catholics with anything like that perfect toleration which we know now is due to all men. Harsh, bad laws were passed, forbidding them the exercise of their religion, At first they were not enforced, but eventually they produced much injustice and cruelty.

8. The pope was very angry with Elizabeth; and he published a decree, in which he excommunicated all sovereigns who were not Roman Catholics, saying that they must not reign, and that their subjects need not obey them. He did not mention Elizabeth's name,

but of course this was aimed at her. His behaviour displeased Elizabeth exceedingly, and made her more determined than ever to have nothing to do with him.

9. Her people were anxious that she should marry, and Philip of Spain, who had been Mary's husband, offered her his hand. But she refused him, as she well might do. Many other princes from all parts of Europe and some Englishmen eagerly sought her in marriage, but in the end she declined them all. "I will have here but one mistress, and no master," she once said to the Earl of Leicester. Yet he was the suitor to whom she most inclined, and she continued to treat him with marked favour. It would have been a choice unworthy of her, and Elizabeth, who always maintained her self-respect as a woman and a queen, was doubtless alive to this.

10. Ten years passed over Elizabeth's crowned head, and during all that time not a single Englishman was put to death for religious or political matters. There were no rebellions, there were no scaffolds or stakes. Of no other country in Europe could the same be said, for while peace and prosperity thus reigned in England, many other lands were full of persecution and bloodshed.

11. But when these ten blessed years were ended, troubles began, and one of the first of these was connected with the young Queen of Scotland, Mary, Queen of Scots, as she is usually called. Her grandmother was Henry the Eighth's sister, so that she was Elizabeth's cousin. Mary, who was surpassingly beautiful, was educated in France, her mother's country, and married the young French king.

12. Mary was a mere girl at the time of her marriage, and she was so foolish as to assume the title of Queen of England as soon as Elizabeth ascended the throne, saying that Elizabeth's mother having been executed Elizabeth could not reign, and therefore Mary herself ought to be queen. Elizabeth was justly offended at this, and she was also alarmed because Mary was a Roman Catholic, and she feared that some of the English Catholics might support Mary's claim to the throne.

13. Mary was advised to act in this silly way by her French relations. Meantime there were disturbances in her own country of Scotland, between the Catholics and Protestants. Mary sent French troops to help the Catholics, and Elizabeth sent English troops to help the Protestants. After a time peace was made between the two parties, and a treaty drawn up, which Elizabeth signed at once, but Mary, influenced by her friends, refused to sign it. Again and again Elizabeth requested her to add her name to the treaty; and for nearly a year Mary made excuses for not doing so.

14. While things were in this state her young husband died. Her position was at once altered. She was no longer Queen of France, and soon made up her mind to return to Scotland. Voyages in those days were sometimes serious matters, for pirates or sea-robbers were about; and Mary thought it would be safer to sail to England, and then enter Scotland by land; and she asked Elizabeth's leave to pass through England. Elizabeth replied that she would not grant permission unless Mary would first sign the treaty.

15. Mary was exceedingly angry at this refusal, which I think she deserved, and she went by water all the way to Scotland. She had left her native land when she was so young that she hardly remembered it at all, and loved France far better, where she had spent a happy girlhood, where she had been a wife and queen, caressed and admired; and she was sorely grieved to leave it.

16. She sailed with a splendid company of lords and ladies, in August, 1561. When she saw the shores of France fading from her sight she wept bitterly, often exclaiming—"Farewell, France, farewell: I shall never see thee more." She reached Scotland in safety; but trouble soon began. A great many of her subjects were Protestants, and they did not like that their beautiful queen should be a Catholic.

17. Their new faith had taught them many things, but it had not yet taught them to be patient and forbearing; and they were sometimes very harsh and rude in their treatment of their young queen. Perhaps if they had been more gentle with her they might have succeeded better. Several of them were really good men, who would willingly have died for their religion, but in their hatred of the errors of the Romish Church they thought it was right to be intolerant and bitter towards those who belonged to it. It was a most sad mistake, but I am sorry to think we are not entirely free from it even now.

18. In spite of all, Mary got on tolerably for two or three years, being assisted in her government by her half brother, Lord Moray. Then she married Lord Darnley. Her choice much displeased Elizabeth, and

no wonder, for Darnley was a weak-minded, conceited boy; and it was a fatal day for Mary when she became his wife.

19. She soon grew disgusted with him, and he became vexed with her. She had an Italian secretary named Rizzio. She liked him very much, for he was an accomplished man. Darnley could not bear him, and was jealous of his influence over Mary. At last the weak, cruel prince, resolved to have Rizzio murdered; and some nobles who hated Rizzio promised their help in this crime.

20. One evening when Mary was sitting at supper with Rizzio and other attendants, and while Darnley was standing behind her chair, the murderers entered the room, Lord Darnley having shown them the way. There was a brief dispute, and Rizzio, seeing his danger, ran behind the queen to shelter himself, and caught hold of her dress.

21. Darnley forced him to let go. The table was upset, the candles put out, and the murderers rushed on Rizzio, who fell dead in the next room, pierced with fifty-five wounds. When Mary knew that he was dead she wiped away her tears, saying that she "would weep no more, but think only of revenge."

22. Not long afterwards she became the mother of a son, who in later years was James VI. of Scotland, and James I. of England. After the death of Rizzio, the Earl of Bothwell stood high in her favour. Lord Darnley went away to Glasgow, and there was taken very ill of small-pox. When he was well, both he and his wife came to Edinburgh; yet Darnley did not go to the palace with her, but lived alone with his

attendants in a solitary house, where Mary used to visit him.

23. One night when Mary was not there, a great explosion was heard, and it was found that Darnley's house had been blown up, and he and his servants killed in the ruins. There was little doubt that Bothwell was the murderer, and some believed that Mary had given her approval to the deed. She consented that Bothwell should be tried for the crime. But his trial was a mockery: not one witness was examined; the whole affair was a mere pretence, and he was acquitted.

24. One day when Mary was out riding, Bothwell met her, and carried her off to his castle; many thought with her consent. Then he divorced his own wife, and married Mary, three months after Darnley's death. This conduct so disgusted her subjects, that many of the nobles took up arms to fight against her and Bothwell. A month after this hateful marriage, Mary surrendered to the nobles, and was imprisoned in a strong castle in Lochleven.

25. She would not give up Bothwell, so the nobles compelled her to promise that she would resign her throne to her little son, under a regent. In about twelve months, however, she escaped from Lochleven; and a battle was fought at Langside, in which she was entirely defeated. To avoid being taken prisoner by her nobles, and because she could go nowhere else, she fled to England, hoping that Elizabeth would receive her.

26. Elizabeth refused to see her unless she could prove that she was guiltless of her husband's murder.

Mary consented to have the matter examined, and a conference was held, at which very strong proofs of Mary's guilt were brought forward. Then she refused to make any defence, unless she were allowed to do so in the presence of the queen and the whole nobility. This was declined.

27. For a time her half-brother, Moray, ruled Scotland, and Elizabeth and her ministers were sorely puzzled to know what to do with Mary. If she were permitted to go to France she would be able to stir up Elizabeth's enemies against England; if Elizabeth restored her to Scotland, in the same position as she was before, it would be doing a great unkindness to the Protestant party there, who were friends of the English queen.

28. The wiser plan would have been to let Mary reign under her half-brother Moray's control; and it is possible that Elizabeth would have arranged this; but most unhappily Moray was murdered. In this most difficult question, what to do with Mary? Elizabeth at last came to the worst possible decision, for she determined to keep her a prisoner. Elizabeth had no right to do this. It was wrong and unjust.

29. But the flight of the Queen of Scots to England was not the only trouble that perplexed Elizabeth at the end of the first ten peaceful years of her reign. While England had enjoyed this blissful calm, other kingdoms in Europe seemed as if they would be torn to pieces, from the fighting and persecution that arose from the spread of Protestantism in many Catholic States, and now England was to feel the consequences of this terrible contention.

30. The wretched Philip II. of Spain at that time governed the Netherlands, that country which is now divided into Holland and Belgium. Many of the people of the Netherlands were Protestants, and there Philip was carrying on as awful a persecution as the world has ever seen. The Netherlanders, led by the noble, gallant Prince of Orange, had risen against their oppressor, and the country was like one vast battle field.

31. In France too, the Protestants, or Huguenots, as they were called there, had taken up arms in defence of their religion, and the country was desolated by civil war. Now the Protestants, all over Europe, looked on Elizabeth as their most powerful friend, and therefore she was hated by many Roman Catholics.

32. The pope had been advised by his cardinals to offer the crown of England to any Catholic prince who could conquer the country. And Philip of Spain, and others, encouraged some of the Roman Catholic nobles of England to rebel against their queen. The revolt was subdued, but not without much bloodshed and cruelty.

33. Not content with this Philip tried to have Elizabeth murdered, and really sent persons to England to kill her, but God never suffered them to execute their purpose. Now, when Elizabeth knew that her enemies abroad where plotting to deprive her of her crown and life, and were persuading her Catholic subjects to rebel, she felt herself in great peril, and began to make the laws against the Roman Catholic religion much more severe.

34. Elizabeth herself was disposed to be indulgent,

and so was her wise minister Lord Burleigh; but the pope and Philip were always trying to ruin her; and she and her ministers became alarmed. Many English Catholics honestly believed that the pope had a right to give away Elizabeth's kingdom; but we know now that it is very wrong to punish men for their opinions. It is only for their deeds that they should suffer, not for their thoughts.

35. Yet Elizabeth was in real danger, for there were foolish, evil-minded men among the Catholics, who really wished to dethrone her; and it was for this reason that the laws were made harsher against all Catholics. But I cannot help thinking that if Elizabeth had trusted them from the first, and treated them exactly like her Protestant subjects, she would have had few rebels among them; for they were Englishmen too.

36. But in those days few persons understood the duty of allowing full liberty of conscience. So the more Elizabeth feared the Catholics, the more harshly she treated them. They were forbidden to have any churches of their own, and fined if they did not attend the Protestant ones. They were not allowed to meet for worship in private houses, and once all priests were ordered to leave the kingdom.

37. Still Elizabeth shrank from putting people to death for their religion, but in the eighteenth year of her reign she was induced to order this. Two persons were burnt at Smithfield. They were not Roman Catholics, but held some very strange religious views. I am sorry to have to tell you of this cruel deed. Up to this time no man had been put to death in Eng-

land for his religion in Elizabeth's reign, which showed her government to be more tolerant than any other in Europe; but now we see this dark stain of blood.

1. How did Elizabeth act about religion?
2. What did the pope do?
3. Why was Elizabeth offended with Mary Queen of Scots?
4. Who was Rizzio, and what was his fate?
5. How did Lord Darnley lose his life?
6. Why did Mary's nobles rebel?
7. What caused her flight to England?
8. How did Elizabeth treat her?
9. What foreign king tried to ruin Elizabeth, and what was the consequence to English Roman Catholics.

CHAPTER XXX.

ELIZABETH. (CONTINUED.)

1. MEANWHILE, in 1572, an awful slaughter had been committed in France. I mean the massacre of St. Bartholomew. The King of France, Charles IX., was a young man, and much under the influence of his mother, Catherine de Medicis, a most wicked woman. She hated the Huguenots or Protestants, and resolved to get rid of them at one blow. So she pretended that she wished to be friendly with them.

2. She invited the leaders of the Huguenots to come to Paris to celebrate the marriage of the king's sister. Thus she had them all in her power; and she fixed the twenty-fourth of August, St. Bartholomew's day, for a general massacre of the Huguenots. At two in the morning the signal was given, and the work of death began.

3. The good Coligny, the great leader of the

Huguenots, was one of the first killed, and then the slaughter became general. Wherever a Huguenot was found he was slain. For eight days and nights the murdering went on. The streets of Paris ran with blood, and were strewn with the dead. In other parts of France the Huguenots were hunted up, and put to death. It is said that, in all, seventy thousand persons perished. This is called in history—the Massacre of St. Bartholomew.

4. The King of France sent an ambassador to England to try and excuse this atrocious murder to Queen Elizabeth. The ambassador himself was so horrified at what had taken place, that he said he was ashamed to bear the name of Frenchman. Nothing could be more solemn than the manner in which he was received at the English court. All the ladies and gentlemen were dressed in deep mourning for the Huguenots, and stood with sorrowful faces, without speaking a word, on each side of the chambers through which he passed on his way to the queen.

5. In this year the first nobleman who suffered death in Elizabeth's reign was executed—the powerful and wealthy Duke of Norfolk. He was related to Elizabeth, but being charmed by the great beauty and grace of Mary Queen of Scots, he entered into a plan for liberating her from prison, and marrying her, and also gave help and encouragement to the queen's enemies. He was one of many brave men who were fascinated by Mary's beauty, and who died for her sake.

6. He was found guilty, and sentenced to death; but Elizabeth hesitated much before she could make

up her mind to have him executed; but at last she consented that he should die. Two years later some Catholic priests and gentlemen formed a plot to kill Elizabeth, free Mary, and make her Queen of England. It was discovered, and they were executed.

7. There was a strong suspicion that Mary had taken part in this plot, and many English people thought that Elizabeth's life would never be safe so long as Mary lived. The Queen now formed a commission of noblemen, before whom Mary was brought to trial. She stood there defenceless, and surrounded by enemies, but she maintained her dignity. She was condemned to die, and, at the time, the sentence gave satisfaction in England, though now, when all the plotting and peril are over, it is shocking to our feelings.

8. Perhaps Elizabeth's great error was keeping Mary a prisoner as she had done. This brought her into difficulty. While Mary was in England, I believe that Elizabeth's life was in danger; but to execute the unfortunate and helpless Queen of Scots was, at any rate, a very dreadful thing, though the act seemed neccessary to Elizabeth, and her wisest ministers, in that stormy time.

9. The only request made by poor Mary to the three noblemen who were sent down to witness her execution was that she might have a visit from a priest of her own religion. It was cruelly refused. The night before her death she spent much of her time in prayer. Two of her guards supported her to the scaffold, for during her long imprisonment of nineteen years she had almost lost the use of her limbs.

10. Her trusty steward, Sir Andrew Melville, met her on the way, wringing his hands in bitter sorrow. But she said to him, "Rather rejoice, my faithful servant, that the troubles of Mary Stuart are about to end." I am ashamed to say that a Protestant clergyman brutally tormented her by urging her to change her religion, as she stood on the scaffold, but she told him she would never change.

11. Her servants wept bitterly, but she was calm, putting her finger on her lips to bid them be quiet. When the head of the beautiful queen fell on the scaffold groans of pity where heard from those around. She was gone, after long sufferings and trials upon earth, to be judged by One who could not judge amiss; and to His never-failing mercy we will leave her. God only knows how much of what was evil in her conduct was caused by her training at the court of the wicked Catherine de Medicis in France.

12. Before the execution of the unfortunate Queen of Scots, other Roman Catholics had suffered death in England. I believe it is correct to say that none of them were executed simply as Roman Catholics, but because they considered the pope had a right to dethrone Elizabeth; and were therefore held to be her enemies. Of course, when they really tried to dethrone or kill her, it was right to punish them, but it was not right to punish them for merely thinking that the pope had power to give away her crown. But few people saw this distinction then.

13. I must now tell you of events abroad in which our country was concerned. I have spoken of Philip the Second's persecution of the Protestants in the

Netherlands, which was so awful, and so barbarous, that the persecution in England, in Queen Mary's reign, was nothing at all in comparison. In the Netherlands thousands upon thousands of persons had been put to death, until it seemed a wonder that there were any people left to be killed.

14. Great numbers fled to England, and were kindly received by Elizabeth. To her the Netherlanders appealed for help in their bitter distress. And though, fearing a quarrel with Spain, she hesitated, and was undecided in her conduct at first, yet she rendered very important assistance to the Netherlanders, partly by lending them money, partly by sending them soldiers, and perhaps still more by letting Europe know that she was their friend.

15. The most distinguished Englishman who died in the Netherlands, fighting against the Spaniards, was Sir Philip Sidney. He was hardly thirty-three, but known far and wide for his talents, his accomplishments and his courage. Gentle, generous, brave and honourable, he was a real English gentleman. He stood high in Elizabeth's favour, and his life was full of brightness.

16. As he was being carried from the field of battle, mortally wounded, he begged for a little water to slake his terrible thirst. His men got some and brought it to him, but just as he was lifting it to his lips he saw a poor soldier, dreadfully wounded, borne past him, who looked with longing eyes at the cool water. Without tasting a drop himself, Sir Philip Sidney handed it to the dying man, saying—"Thy necessity is yet greater than mine."

17. But it is time to tell you of the greatest event of Elizabeth's reign, one which England never can forget. I mean the defeat of the Spanish Armada. Philip, whose hatred of Elizabeth never slept, resolved to make one tremendous effort to conquer England; and he made immense preparations for this purpose. In the beginning of May, 1588, his great fleet was ready for sea, and he was so sure of success that he called it the "Invincible Armada." He had also a great army in the Netherlands which he meant to send to England, but it was never suffered to reach our shores.

18. It was on the 29th of May that the Armada sailed from Spain. Philip thought it was on its way to conquer England, but it was on its way to destruction. Meanwhile the people of England heard that the vast fleet was coming; and a brave spirit woke up through all the land. Never did the courage of the strong-hearted queen shine brighter than in this hour of trial. She fitted out new vessels herself, and many noblemen and gentlemen built and manned others at their own expense.

19. The Roman Catholics offered all the assistance in their power as heartily as any. They were Englishmen and loved their country dearly, and would not for worlds that Philip should conquer it, though he professed their own religion. Elizabeth, with a wisdom far exceeding that of most sovereigns of her time, willingly accepted their help, and she placed a Catholic nobleman, Lord Howard, of Effingham, in command of the fleet. Under him were the great admirals Drake, Hawkins, and Frobisher.

20. Elizabeth also got her army ready in case the Spaniards should succeed in landing. She reviewed her troops and spoke bravely to them, saying—that though she had only the body of a feeble woman, yet she had the heart of a king—and what was more—of a King of England; and that she would rather take up arms herself and fight than let Philip conquer her kingdom.

21. Thus Englishmen waited for the Armada to appear. Roman Catholics and Protestants united, as if with one heart and mind to defend their country. It was not for fame or conquest that they were about to fight, but for their freedom, their homes, and their native land. While the Armada was still near the Spanish coast, a violent storm arose which did it much damage. It took several weeks to repair the injured vessels, and then the great fleet put to sea again.

22. On the 19th July the Armada first came in sight, off the Lizard Point, in Cornwall. The news was at once sent to Lord Howard, who was with his vessels in Plymouth Sound; and he went out directly to meet the Armada. Then beacon fires were lighted on the highest hills to give warning; and the glare was beheld far off; and wherever it was seen more fires were lit upon the hills; and so the fiery message was borne through all the land.

23. When Lord Howard first saw the Armada it was coming towards him in the shape of a half moon, which was seven miles long, from one end to the other. The size of the Spanish vessels was enormous for those days; and the great fleet must have looked

very formidable. It continued to sail up the English Channel; and Lord Howard followed it, harassing the Spaniards without coming to an engagement.

24. After a time Lord Howard's own ship, the Ark Royal, attacked one of the Spanish vessels, and then several other ships, on both sides, joined the combat. They kept on firing for two hours, but did not come close to each other. The Spaniards had the wind in their faces, which troubled them; and after this fight the English sailors did not mind the great size of the vessels in the Armada, for they saw that the Spaniards were not nearly such clever sailors as the English.

25. During the night one of the large Spanish ships took fire; and another was injured by running foul of one of the sister vessels; and was captured next day by Sir Francis Drake. The Spanish Admiral sailed on towards the Isle of Wight, for he wanted to go up the Channel that he might help the passage to England of the army in the Netherlands, which was commanded by Philip's ablest general, the Prince of Parma. But the Admiral tried in vain: the Prince of Parma never stood on English ground.

26. On the 23rd of July the Armada and the English fleet fought all day long without any decided advantage on either side. The small English vessels kept dashing in and out among the great Spanish ships, firing on them, and then getting out of the way before the Spaniards could return the fire. The following day Lord Howard was unable to attack the Armada because he had used all his powder and shot, but he soon obtained a fresh supply from the English

gentlemen, Protestant and Catholic, who lived on the coast.

27. Lord Howard seeing that the Spanish admiral was trying to sail where the Prince of Parma could join him was determined to prevent their forces from being united. The plan which he tried was Drake's idea. He chose eight of his least useful vessels, had them covered with tar, and filled with things which would burn fiercely. In the night these vessels were set on fire and driven into the midst of the Armada.

28. The Spaniards were greatly alarmed when they saw the blazing vessels, and in much confusion tried to get out of the way. Lord Howard sailed after them, and at four in the summer morning began the last fierce fight between the English and the Spanish, on which the fate of England hung. The battle ended about five in the evening, and by that time the Armada was utterly defeated.

29. So closed this memorable day. You may fancy what joy there was through all the land when the news was told; when it was known that the proud enemy was conquered and flying, and that England remained—as God grant she ever may remain—free, and unsoiled by an invader's tread. A day of public thanksgiving was appointed, when the queen went in state to St. Paul's to return thanks for this great deliverance.

30. The Spaniards had fought most bravely, and only fled when they saw that they could do no more. A terrible storm arose and followed the flying Armada, and did much damage to the ships that were left. Some sank in the North Sea, some were dashed to

pieces on the rocks of Norway, some driven on the shores of Scotland, and thirty were wrecked on different parts of the coast of Ireland.

31. It was but a small remnant of the once mighty Armada that reached Spain at last. What the battle had spared the storm had shattered. On one of the medals struck in memory of this great victory is a picture of the Armada and the words—"Jehovah blew, and they were scattered." God had saved England from one of the worst dangers that ever threatened her.

32. Elizabeth's reign is famous for its naval deeds. Sir Francis Drake was a Devon man, and the first Englishman who sailed round the world. He had had many an encounter with the Spanish before he met them in the mortal conflict with the Armada. Sir Walter Raleigh, also born in Devonshire, distinguished himself both on land and sea. He was a wonderfully-gifted man, and very handsome and courteous.

33. He was a great favourite of Elizabeth. The first time she particularly noticed him, was one day when he was very young. The queen was out walking with her attendants, and came to a wet place in the path which she hesitated to cross. Raleigh was there, and in a moment he took off his splendid cloak and threw it over the mud, that the queen might walk on it.

34. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Raleigh's half-brother, was another naval hero. On returning from his last voyage of discovery he was overtaken by a terrible storm. He had three vessels with him, and he was on board a very small one, for he would not stay in his large ship, the Golden Hind, but staid with the

sailors in the little one where the danger was greater. While the tempest was raging fearfully, he called out to the captain of the Golden Hind, and said—"We are as near heaven on sea as on land."

35. These were his last words. The waves swept over his little bark, and the gallant heart of Sir Humphrey Gilbert lay beneath the waters. Another brave gentleman of Devon was Sir Richard Grenville. He was sent out on an expedition against the Spaniards, and while the English vessels were lying in a harbour in the Azores, the Spanish fleet suddenly appeared, and not choosing to be surrounded, the English put out to sea.

36. All went but Sir Richard Grenville's ship. Some of his men were on shore, and he would not go without them; and so he was enclosed between the land and the enemy's fleet. Though he had only one vessel, and the Spanish had more than fifty vessels, he would not surrender, but began to fight. So desperate was the valour of himself and his men, that the battle, which began at three in the afternoon, lasted till the dawn of the next day.

37. Fifteen times the Spaniards got on board the Revenge, but the English sailors drove them back. At length their powder was done, their masts gone, many of their weapons broken. Even then Sir Richard Grenville was not willing to yield, though he was covered with wounds. But his men thought it useless to resist any longer, and the Revenge surrendered. The Spaniards were greatly struck with Sir Richard Grenville's valour, and treated him very kindly, but he died in two days.

38. Large books might be filled with the story of

Elizabeth's reign, but I have not room to tell you much more about it. One of the last troubles of her life was connected with the Earl of Essex. He was a young, gallant, generous nobleman, and bid fair to win many honours. He was greatly liked by Elizabeth; and his talents and many good qualities deserved admiration. He was far before most men of his time in his love of religious freedom for all.

39. But he fell into disgrace with the queen, partly through his own fault, partly through the fault of others. He had a rash and hasty temper, and feeling himself hardly treated he entered into a plot to remove from the councils of Elizabeth those whom he considered his enemies. There was an outbreak in the city of London in consequence, and Essex was taken prisoner, and sentenced to die for treason.

40. Elizabeth was unwilling to have him executed; and always mourned over his death. It was sad indeed, that with all his gifts, he let himself be led into rash and unwise conduct, which ended in a violent doom. He was executed in 1601. In March, 1603, Elizabeth died, at the age of 70.

41. Her long reign was ended—a reign full of great events. She came to the throne when the country was in misery and distraction, but she made the name of England a name of power through all the world. Her fleets sailed in every sea. She humbled the might of Spain. She was the bulwark of the Protestant faith at home and abroad; while the wise and gifted men who stood around her throne shared in, and added to her glory.

42. When I speak thus, I do not forget her weaknesses, nor yet her faults, which were by no means small.

But I think it is juster to dwell on those great qualities which were so conspicuous in her, and so invaluable to her country. If her poor mother, when she stood upon the scaffold, could have forseen the future of her child, I think that she would have been comforted. When Elizabeth was born, her father was angry because she was a girl, not knowing that she would "show herself to be worth many men."

43. But the mighty Elizabeth Tudor was laid in Westminster Abbey; and Englishmen were soon to learn what they had lost when the sceptre she had held so royally was fallen into the hands of the weak and head-strong Stuarts.

44. The population in Elizabeth's time was about five millions. In her reign ladies wore immense ruffs round their necks, commonly made of worked cambric, starched stiff. Stockings knitted of silk were first made in England, and the ladies liked to have very handsome slippers of velvet, ornamented with gold and silver. In her reign English people first made their knives themselves. Forks were not yet used.

45. Coaches were first used in England about this time, though ladies oftener rode on horseback, or in a sort of wagon. Both Elizabeth and her sister Mary, while princesses, were good needlewomen; and Elizabeth once made a cambric shirt, as a present for her brother, Edward VI.

1. What was the fate of the Queen of Scots, and why?
2. Who sent out the Spanish Armada, and with what object?
3. Where, and in what form did it first come in sight?
4. How did Drake cause confusion in the Armada?
5. How long did the last day's fighting continue, and what was its result?
6. Name some of the naval heroes of this reign?

Period the Fourth.

THE STUART LINE

(1603—1660.)

THE STUART LINE.

James I.	1603—1625
Charles I.	1625—1649
(*The Commonwealth*, 1649—1660.)	
Charles II.	1660—1680
James II.	1685—1688
William III. and Mary	1688—1702
Anne	1702—1714

THE STUART LINE.

CHAPTER XXXI.

JAMES I. (1603—1625).

1. JAMES I., son of the unhappy Mary, Queen of Scots, now became King of England, as well as of Scotland. He was in some respects a learned man, but weak and conceited to the last degree, and unprincely in his manners. He was very fond of writing and arguing on religious subjects, and thought himself a match for any one in dispute. It was one of his favorite opinions that a king could do as he liked, and he taught his sons to think so too.

2. Soon after he came to the throne a plot was discovered in favour of the Lady Arabella Stuart. She had the misfortune to belong to the royal line, and was therefore suspected of wishing to be queen. Sir Walter Raleigh was accused of being engaged in this plot. He defended himself most ably and eloquently on his trial; but was sentenced to die. However he was not executed, but sent to the Tower, where he spent twelve long years, comforted by the companionship of his faithful wife, and soothing his weariness with studying, and writing poetry and history.

3. In a little while came the famous Gunpowder Plot of the 5th of November. It was caused by the

fury and disappointment of the Roman Catholics, when they found that the king was adding to the severity of the laws against them, instead of making them milder, as they had expected. Some Catholic gentlemen were constantly harassed, and made to pay large fines; and one of them, named Catesby, resolved on a plot to blow up with gunpowder, the House of Lords and the House of Commons, when the king was present opening parliament.

4. It was a very wicked, murderous plan; but James himself must bear part of the blame, because he had broken his promise of toleration to the Catholics. Guy Fawkes, who was a gentleman by birth, like the rest of the conspirators, freely promised his help, offering to set the powder on fire. They hired a house at Westminster, near the Houses of Parliament. They meant to cut through the wall, lay a train of gunpowder, and then blow up the parliament.

5. They worked hard at the wall, but they were not accustomed to such labour, and got on slowly. Then they found that a man who rented a coal-cellar under the House of Lords was about to remove. They at once took the empty cellar, which seemed the very place for their horrible purpose. They brought into it barrels of gunpowder, and carefully covered them over with wood. Some of the conspirators were shocked at the thought of destroying so many lives, but they overcame their scruples, and joined in the plot.

6. They fixed on the 5th of November for their dark deed, when the king would open parliament, and he and many of the nobility and gentry of

England would be assembled there. But there would be those among them whose safety was very dear to the hearts of some of the plotters, and they wished to warn them to keep away. A mysterious letter, giving this advice, was written by one of the conspirators to Lord Monteagle, who showed it to the king and his ministers. Suspicion was aroused, the cellar was searched, and there was found the gunpowder and Guy Fawkes ready to set it alight.

7. Some of those engaged in the plot were arrested at once. Others, who were more fortunate, were attacked in a country house belonging to one of them, and refusing to yield themselves prisoners, fought desperately till they were slain or mortally wounded. The rest perished on the scaffold, fearless to the last, confessing that their intended act was wrong, but pleading that they were driven to it by despair. Not one of them was braver than Guy Fawkes, and not one of them was treated with greater cruelty.

8. In 1612 the king's eldest son Henry died, to the grief of the nation. He was not yet nineteen, and was a graceful, spirited, generous-hearted youth. Two years later James perpetrated the blackest act of his reign—the execution of Sir Walter Raleigh. During his long imprisonment he had studied much, and he believed that he could find the way to a rich gold mine in America.

9. This was a very natural thought, for the Spaniards had brought great store of silver and gold from the new world. The king wanted money, so he allowed Raleigh to leave the Tower and sail across the sea to seek for the mine; but the expedition

failed utterly; they could not find the gold. Raleigh became ill, his brave young son was killed, fighting against the Spaniards, and he returned to England ruined and broken-hearted.

10. Then the king resolved to put him to death, and with a shameful injustice he was condemned to die. He took a calm farewell of his devoted wife, and went with a cheerful face to the scaffold. There he knelt down and prayed. Then rising, he clasped his hands and said—"Now I am going to God." He felt the edge of the axe and smiled, saying—"This is a sharp medicine, but it will cure all diseases." And so died the gifted, wonderful Raleigh.

11. In the latter part of James's reign, his great favourite was Villiers, Duke of Buckingham, a foolish, reckless, dissipated man, who had much influence over his sovereign. Prince Charles, now the heir to the throne, went with Buckingham on a wild expedition to Spain, to see a princess there that Charles fancied for a wife. But he never married her. In the early part of 1625 James I. died, in the fifty-ninth year of his age.

1. What kingdoms were united by James I?
2. What caused the Gunpowder Plot?
3. What did they mean to do?
4. What day was fixed for their deed, and how was it prevented?
5. What became of the conspirators?
6. What distinguished man was executed, and why?

CHAPTER XXXII.

CHARLES I. (1625—1649).

1. IN 1625 Charles I. became King of England, in the twenty-fifth year of his age. He was studious and intellectual in his tastes, refined and courteous in manner, and elegant in person. But he was very unfit to govern the proud, spirited people of England. His father had taught him, what is styled the Divine Right of kings, namely that kings had a right to do as they pleased, and that subjects were bound in all things to obey their kings, whether they were good or bad, wise or foolish. Charles learnt the lesson well, and this idea, and his want of sincerity, caused his ruin.

2. A few weeks after his father's death Charles's young bride came from France. Henrietta Maria was a lively, pretty lady, but self-willed and unamiable. She had much influence over her husband, and it would have been well for him had his wife been a wiser woman. She was a Catholic, though Charles was, of course, a Protestant. Because of this marriage there was a treaty with France, and this treaty led Charles into a disgraceful affair in the beginning of his reign.

3. For the French king was fighting against some of his own subjects who were Huguenots, and he asked Charles to help him, who therefore sent some men-of-war to his assistance. But when their crews found they were meant to fight against the Huguenots, for whom they felt so much sympathy, they said they

would do nothing of the kind, and their Admiral had to bring them home again. The English were very angry with their king for daring to send his sailors on such an errand.

4. A little later a large fleet, which was sent against Spain, entirely failed in its object, and as the failure was partly Buckingham's fault he was more disliked than ever, and the parliament wanted the king to send him away from his councils. They would talk about this before voting money for Charles, and to silence them he dissolved the parliament. Then, when he had sent away all the members, he was so foolish as to try to get the money he wanted by means which were quite against the laws.

5. Now of course no government can be carried on without a great deal of expense, and therefore it is needful that there should be taxes. But it is one of the most prized of English laws, that the House of Commons should every year say by their votes what sum of money shall be given to the government by the nation. Charles had now broken this law, and when parliament met again, they sent him an address called "The Petition of Right."

6. In this petition they reminded him that he had acted unlawfully in raising money and in other ways, and begged him for the future to obey the laws. Charles hesitated at first, but at last he gave his consent to "The Petition of Right," and thus confirmed one of the most valued rights which had been secured for England by the bold barons of Runnymede, when they forced the Magna Carta from King John. Before this year was ended, Buckingham was stabbed to the

heart in the streets of Portsmouth. His mad murderer thought that he was doing a good deed, as if murder ever could be right.

7. In 1629 the parliament again complained that the king was raising money without consulting them. One brave, good gentleman, Sir John Eliot, boldly and strongly condemned the king's conduct. This made Charles very angry, and he sent Sir John to the Tower. After he had been there four years his health failed, and he so pined for the free, fresh air, that he begged to be let out for a little while till he was better. But his petition was in vain, and he died in the dreary Tower, far away from his pleasant Cornish home.

8. The king's principal advisers in his foolish and unjust acts were Lord Strafford and Archbishop Laud, both of whom seemed to think that Charles had a right to do as he liked. The religious sect of the Puritans was now very large. They thought that Laud and his party kept up some ceremonies in the English Church too much like those of the Roman Catholics. The Puritans were very strict and stern in some of their notions, concerning many amusements, and were very grave in their manners.

9. But though many of their opinions were harsh and unwise, taken more from the laws of the Old Testament than from the teachings of the New, yet with all their defects the *real* Puritans were brave, honest-hearted, God-fearing men, who courageously upheld what they believed to be truth. They did much for England in those days of trouble, and deserve our lasting respect: though we cannot too

carefully avoid the narrowness, and many other errors, which disfigured their faith, but we can honour them while we clearly see their faults.

10. Now Archbishop Laud chose that all the people of England should use the same prayers, and worship in the same way; and when the Puritans objected they were cruelly persecuted. I do not mean that any of them were burnt to death; but persons may be treated very brutally without anything quite so dreadful as burning. So what with Charles's bad government, and Laud's persecutions, the country was in a poor state.

11. I must now explain to you the "ship-money" which helped to bring England into the horrors of civil war. The king wanted ships for his navy, and, without saying a word to his parliament, he ordered his people to provide him with money to build and fit them out. Some other English kings in by-gone times had tried the same plan in a small way, but it was quite unlawful. Charles ought to have told the parliament what he wanted, and asked them to vote the needful funds.

12. There was then living in the county of Buckinghamshire a wealthy young Englishman, named John Hampden. Very clever, highly-educated, gentle, brave, refined, and good, he was in truth a real English gentleman. He was bidden by the king's officers to give one pound towards the ship-money; but he would not pay it, and I will tell you why. John Hampden was rich, and he could as easily have spared a pound as a penny. If he had cared only for a quiet life, he [illegible] the money and had no further trouble.

13. But he loved his country better than he loved his own comfort. He knew that Charles's demand was unlawful, and if he yielded to it, it would seem as if he approved of it. So he refused. Then the king requested the judges to say whether Hampden was right or wrong. One of them, named Croke, felt sure that he was right, but he was afraid that if he said so the king would not let him be judge any longer, and that his wife and children would be brought to ruin.

14. Then his wife said to him that it was far better to be poor than to sin against one's conscience. She told him that she could bear poverty, but that she could not bear him to do wrong, and that he must not let his love for his wife and children hinder him in his duty. He took her at her word, and, strengthened by his brave wife's counsel, boldly declared that John Hampden was right, and the king wrong. But most of the judges decided the other way, and spoke in Charles's favour, who did not, however, venture to punish Hampden.

15. Meanwhile the king had begun a desperate quarrel with his Scottish subjects. He chose that they should use the Liturgy of the English Church, and have the same kind of church government by bishops, &c. But the Scotch were all Presbyterians, and were accustomed to conduct their worship differently, and they refused to alter it. Charles was greatly displeased, and raising an army, marched up to Berwick. The Scotch raised an army too, and came to meet him; but a treaty was agreed on, and they parted without fighting.

16. Lord Strafford was with Charles at this time, having been summoned back from Ireland, where he had been ruling in the king's name, and where he had acted like a tyrant. He was not very willing to come to England, for he knew how his conduct was hated there. But the king insisted, telling Strafford that he wanted him to check the English parliament, and that he would take care that no harm should happen to him.

17. But as soon as Lord Strafford reached London, the parliament sent him to the Tower on a charge of treason. In a little while he was brought to trial in the grand old Westminster Hall, in the presence of the king, and before the peers of England. The trial lasted for weeks. Strafford, though ill at the time, defended himself most ably and eloquently. It is certain that he had acted with glaring injustice, and in a way that tended to ruin his country; and it was right and necessary to take from him the power of doing further mischief.

18. But he was found guilty of treason, and sentenced to death. His misdeeds had been many and great, though no one now would think that he could fairly be accused of treason. But the law was not so clear then as it is now; and the parliament and people of England believed that the country would never be safe while he lived. Charles implored the peers to spare his life, but this they steadily refused to do.

19. At length the king, to his lasting disgrace, signed Strafford's death warrant; for whatever his crimes might be, he had been a faithful servant to Charles, and had unwillingly come to England under

a promise of protection from the king. In a few days Strafford went firmly to his doom. He said—"I dare look death in the face, and I hope the people too." There were one hundred thousand persons around the scaffold, but they were silent and respectful. Archbishop Laud was kept in prison.

20. The state of Ireland at this time was terrible. Maddened by oppression, great numbers of the Irish had risen in rebellion, and attacked the English settlers. Many of the Irish were very wild and ignorant; and when they had once begun to fight they were dreadfully cruel, and slaughtered the English without mercy. There were many more disputes between the king and parliament, which I cannot attempt to describe, but will pass on at once to what is called "the Arrest of the Five Members."

21. There were five gentlemen, one of them Hampden, in the House of Commons, whom Charles particularly disliked and feared, and he thought that if he could seize and imprison them they would not trouble him any more. So one day he went down to the House of Commons with some soldiers, intending to arrest the five members by force, and put them in prison. They were warned just in time to leave the House before he entered it. His plan failed utterly, and the parliament never forgave this act of violence and insult. It helped to make sure the civil war which was fast approaching.

1. How did Charles displease his parliament?
2. Who were the Puritans?
3. What was the ship-money?
4. Why would not Hampden pay it?
5. Who was Lord Strafford, and what was his fate?
6. What was "the Arrest of the Five Members?"

CHAPTER XXXIII.

CHARLES I. (CONTINUED).

1. A FEW months after Charles's attempt to seize the five members he called out his army and went with it to York. The parliament raised an army too, having for commander the Earl of Essex, who was appointed general for king and parliament, for they said it was as much for the king's interest as their's that the disorder in the country should be staid. John Hampden raised and led a regiment for the parliament. Another great man who was rising into notice, Oliver Cromwell, was made a captain under Essex.

2. Cromwell was now about forty-three years of age, having been born at Huntingdon, in 1599. He was by birth a gentleman, a cousin of John Hampden, and had a noble intellect, and great powers of mind. He was a Puritan, and by no means free from the defects of the Puritan creed, but he was a truly religious man, one who believed in God with all his heart. There were many things in his character and conduct to which we may justly object, but take him on the whole he was one of England's greatest men.

3. And now, in the year of 1642, this dear old England was to know the horrors of civil war. War is at all times very horrible. We hear of great battles and victories, and we do not always think of the agony and blood they have cost. Soldiers suffer like other men, and there is anguish in many homes for those who fall. But a civil war is worst of all, for it

is a war between men of the same country and the same kin.

4. The first pitched battle between the king and parliament was fought near Edgehill, in Warwickshire, on a plain called the Vale of the Red Horse. The two armies were drawn up facing each other, but for many hours they stood quite still, looking at one another, but not fighting. There were good men on both sides, who shuddered with horror at the thought of dyeing English earth with English blood; and neither army was willing to begin the strife. At last that weary, awful waiting was over, Essex ordered his troops to fire, and the battle began.

5. When night darkened above the Vale of the Red Horse, some four thousand Englishmen lay there dead; and neither side had gained a decided advantage. The next battle was fought in June, on Chalgrove Field, where the ripening corn was trampled down in the cruel strife. It is a spot for ever memorable, because there the good, true-hearted English gentleman, John Hampden, met with his death wound. He felt that he had received a mortal hurt, and for the first time in his life turned his horse's head away from the battle-field.

6. He reached a neighbouring village, where he lingered for six days, in extreme suffering, and nothing the doctors could do might save him. Faithfully loving his country to the last, he wrote letters, in the midst of his great pain, to his parliament friends, giving them the best counsel he could offer. Then he took the sacrament, and died with a fervent prayer for England on his lips. His sorrowing soldiers carried

him to the grave, singing as they went the ninetieth Psalm, which says, "Lord Thou hast been our dwelling-place in all generations."

7. Three months later was fought the battle of Newbury, in which fell one of the king's worthiest and noblest followers, the young Lord Falkland. He was a very accomplished man, and had been a beloved friend of Hampden. He dearly prized the liberties of England, but when the war broke out he thought it wrong to fight against the king, and had gone to help him. But it seemed as if the miseries of the times would break his heart.

8. He did everything he could do to bring about a peace, and when he saw that there was no hope of it, all his cheerfulness forsook him, and he mourned most bitterly over the troubles of his country. He grew so sad that he was quite unlike himself. On the morning of the battle of Newbury he was begged not to fight, because he was not a soldier. But he said that he foresaw the distress that was coming upon England, and he hoped to be out of it before night. In that battle he was killed, and surely no gentler heart perished in the civil war.

9. Meantime, Oliver Cromwell was becoming a most distinguished officer in the service of the parliament. They called his soldiers "Ironsides," and wonderful, unconquerable men they were when they were led by Cromwell. In July, 1644, was the great battle of Marston Moor, in Yorkshire. It hardly began till the sun was sinking towards the west on that summer evening, and then there was a dreadful struggle, which was at last decided by Cromwell's

"Ironsides," and by ten o'clock the king's troops were flying in all directions.

10. Next year the parliamentary army, under General Fairfax, gained another great victory at Naseby, which Cromwell and his men did much to win. But there were other matters besides fighting going on in England. To the disgrace of the parliament, Archbishop Laud had been executed, for they might as well have let the old man live on in prison the few remaining years of his life. The Presbyterian Scotch had raised an army to help the parliament, and another party in Scotland, under the Duke of Montrose, stood up for the king.

11. There had been several attempts at treaties between Charles and the parliament, but they could not come to any good end. Charles's word was never to be trusted, even when he seemed willing to consent to what was required of him, and, as the parliament felt their power, they often asked unreasonable things, especially those members who were Presbyterians. There were some of this belief in England as well as in Scotland, and in both countries they were inclined to be very narrow-minded, and wanted the king to give up the English Church, which was being as intolerant as Archbishop Laud.

12. It was a sure consequence of the civil war that both parties would find it harder to make terms, when they had once begun to fight, than even before the appeal to arms. Charles tried to make a treaty with the Presbyterian Scotch army, thinking that if they would join him, and turn against the English parliament, he might yet succeed; and many discussions

passed between him and them. The Scotch army would not give him any promise, but I fear they tried to make him think they were more friendly to him than they really were.

13. He was now at Oxford, in a desperate case. He knew that the parliament would soon attack the city, and then perhaps he would be taken prisoner. He therefore fled to the Scottish camp; and, after he had been there a little while, the Scotch army, treating him as if he were a prisoner, gave him up to the English parliament. At the same time the Scotch leaders received from the parliament money that was due to their soldiers; so it looks as if they gave up the king in order to strike a bargain for themselves.

14. Charles was taken to Holmby House, a grand and pleasant place near Naseby, but he did not remain there long. There was a dispute between the parliament and its army, and the latter removed him to Windsor. There his two little children came to see him, but his wife and elder sons had long before left the country, by his wish. And now another attempt was made by the army at a treaty. A remarkable paper was drawn up, with Cromwell's approval, and offered to the king.

15. Cromwell, and a few of his friends, were far more enlightened on the subject of religious liberty than most men of that day. They would not persecute any one for his religion; and, while they would secure for the nation a wider freedom than it had yet possessed, they would leave to the king more dignity and power than had been proposed in earlier treaties.

But Charles scorned these terms,—he even insulted Cromwell, for the unhappy king seemed as blind as ever to his real position.

16. But that was fast becoming a hopeless one. He was taken to Hampton Court, a beautiful palace near London; and then he thought that he would try to leave England secretly. Cromwell seems to have wished he might get safely to France, and join the queen; and, if Charles's friends had been more careful and skilful, I think that he might have easily escaped. He quitted Hampton Court one evening, and the crying of his pet greyhound, left alone in his room, was the first warning that he was gone.

17. But his flight was most wretchedly carried out; and he was soon a prisoner again in Carisbrooke Castle, in the Isle of Wight. He tried to escape from there, but failed. And now something occurred which was enough to break his heart. His eldest son, the Prince of Wales, had got a fleet of ships together, and with them he sailed from Holland, where he had lived for some time, and came towards England. The parliament vessels were not ready to go and fight with him, so that for weeks the prince could sail about in the Channel pretty much as he liked.

18. And yet, though his father's prison was almost close to the sea-shore, he never made one effort to save him; not even when the king sent him a message bidding him to try. Whatever Charles's misdeeds as a king might be, he was a tender father, and did not deserve to be forsaken by his own children; and I think he must have felt his son's heartless indifference more acutely than the loss of his freedom.

19. But his fate was soon to be settled. Those members of the House of Commons who were Presbyterians were forcibly expelled by some of the army. A most violent deed, which only the great peril of the country could possibly excuse. Charles was now a prisoner in Windsor Castle, that stately home of English kings. He feared that he might be murdered, but he had no need for such a fear. His enemies were not the men to soil their hands with so black a crime as murder. What they did they would do in sight of all the world.

20. They decided to bring the king to trial in Westminster Hall as a traitor to his country. One hundred and thirty-five commissioners were appointed to judge him. Among them were Cromwell, and most of the leading men of the parliamentary party. On the 20th of January, 1864, the trial began, and lasted for seven days; while soldiers guarded every approach to the hall, which was thronged with spectators. The unhappy king behaved with much dignity; and though there were a few vulgar-minded men base enough to insult him now that he was fallen, yet on the whole his enemies behaved with moderation, and many persons in the court expressed sympathy for him.

21. On the last day of the trial, as Charles was being led to Westminster Hall, one of the soldiers on guard exclaimed—"God bless you, sir!" The king thanked him; but an officer was brutal enough to strike the man. Charles then said—"Methinks the punishment exceeds the offence." All through the trial he refused to acknowledge the right of that court, or any court, to judge him. Because of this

refusal he was not allowed to say as much as he wished in his own defence; but I think that they ought to have let him say whatever he pleased. He was condemned to die.

22. When his thoughtless wife heard the terrible news it roused her from her folly. He seems always to have loved her; and he was spared what would have been a pain worse than all the rest, the knowledge of how careless she had shown herself of his interests. She was in great trouble now, and wrote to the parliament begging that she might come to England to persuade him to do what they wished; or, if he must die, to comfort him. But they would not receive her letter.

23. His son, the Prince of Wales, now offered to submit to any terms if only his father's life might be spared. But it was too late. There was a time when Charles's life might have been saved, but it was past. He asked to see his youngest son and daughter, the only members of his family who were still in England, before he died. The poor little children came to him; and with bitter woe and weeping, that moved all hearts to see, they parted from their father for the last time.

24. Long before dawn, on a cold winter morning, he rose to prepare himself by prayer for a day of which he would not see the close on earth. The scaffold was erected in front of his own palace of Whitehall. He walked steadily through the park, by throngs of soldiers and other persons, all hushed and silent. If any words were spoken to him, they were words of blessing and of prayer. Never did Charles bear himself so well as now. He stood face to face

with death, and, in its solemn presence, all that was worthless and untrue in him seemed to pass away, and all that was good to rise up in strength and clearness.

25. A vast crowd stood around the scaffold; and in it the king heard men and women praying for him; and none reproved them. He spoke for a little while, still maintaining that no blame attached to him, and that the people had no right to meddle with the government. He said that he had forgiven all the world, and should die true to his faith in the Church of England. Bishop Juxon, a very excellent man, was with him on the scaffold, to whom Charles said, when he was about to lay his head upon the block—"I have a good cause, and a gracious God on my side."

26. The bishop replied—"You have now but one stage more: the stage is turbulent and troublesome, but it is a short one: it will soon carry you a very great way: it will carry you from earth to heaven." Charles answered—"I go from a corruptible to an incorruptible crown, where no disturbances can be." He took off the ornament he wore around his neck, which contained a likeness of his wife, and handed it to the faithful bishop, exclaiming—"Remember!"

27. Then, with an unflinching eye, he laid his head upon the block, and in an instant it was severed from his shoulders. There was no voice of triumph from the great multitude, but instead, a shuddering sound of horror. He was gone from the wrathful judgment of his fellow-men, to the everlasting mercy of his God. And this was the end of the civil war in England. Charles had provoked it, and he was its victim.

28. Now that two hundred years have past away, we feel as though they should have spared his life, and his execution seems to us a very terrible thing. But I think it is not right to blame the men who ordered it. They could not tell what to do with a king whose promises they could never trust. They believed that his death alone could save England and themselves. In this awful war there were good, true men on both sides, and also selfish and bad men. The parliament and its army did much that deserves condemnation, but for all that they did a work for England of which we feel the benefit to this day. But it is fair to tell you that some persons still think Charles was in the right.

1. Where was the first battle fought?
2. How and where did Hampden die?
3. Who was Lord Falkland?
4. With whom did Charles take refuge, and with what result?
5. Where, and by whom was he tried?
6. What was his end?

THE COMMONWEALTH.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

CROMWELL AND HIS PROTECTORATE. (1649—1660.)

1. WHEN the king was dead the House of Commons established a republic or commonwealth, declaring it to be high treason to make his son, or any one else, King of England. The House of Lords was abolished, and the National Church, as such, went down in the general wreck. Thus, their dislike of the conduct of Charles and Laud caused them to overthrow time-honoured institutions which are justly dear to England. But in religious matters one great glory was theirs, that of giving more toleration than had ever been allowed before. The Roman Catholics had never enjoyed so much since the final establishment of the Protestant religion. Very few persons were executed on political grounds. It is said there never was a great revolution in which so few were put to death as in this.

2. In Ireland and in Scotland the king's eldest son was proclaimed as Charles II. I have told you that Ireland had been for a long time full of misery and bloodshed; and most atrocious crimes had been committed there. Cromwell was now sent to that unhappy country, and put a stop to the confusion by measures so extremely severe, that they have often

been called cruel; but the circumstances were desperate. It is said that in the ten months he spent there he did more for peace and order in Ireland than any one before him had done in ten years. On his return to England he was made general-in-chief of the whole army, and sent to fight the royal troops in Scotland.

3. Rarely has there been seen such an army as that which Cromwell led; for the order and sobriety in it were wonderful. He marched to Dunbar before he met with the Scots. There was much sickness among his men, and numbers died of disease. He was short of provisions, and the Scottish army lay between him and the sea, where his vessels were. But his was a heart that would never yield to despair; so he gathered together his little band of twelve thousand soldiers, and made ready to fight twenty-seven thousand troops, that hemmed him in on every side.

4. The Scotch felt sure of the victory. How could twelve thousand men, many of them hungry and ill, conquer more than twice that number, well and strong? But Cromwell was a host in himself. On the 3rd of September he saw the Scotch coming down from their safe position on the hills to attack him, and he exclaimed—"The Lord hath delivered them into our hands." Before many hours had passed, the Scotch were utterly routed, with awful loss, having four thousand men killed, and ten thousand taken prisoners.

5. A year later Charles II. marched his army from Scotland into England, but Cromwell quickly followed him, and utterly defeated him at the battle

of Worcester, which Cromwell called his "crowning mercy." It was fought on the 3rd of September, the day twelve months of the victory of Dunbar. Charles had to fly, and by concealing himself in an oak, and by other contrivances, managed to escape his pursuers, his followers most faithfully hiding and helping him.

6. When Cromwell returned to London, the palace of Hampton Court was offered him for his own use, and an estate worth £4,000 a year was given him. His great powers of mind had made him the most important man in the kingdom, and he was becoming more distinguished as time went on. Now there were many very able men who, like Cromwell, had honestly and bravely struggled against the king. Some of them firmly believed that a republic was the best kind of government for England.

7. But Cromwell seems never to have cared about a republic. He had supported it simply because at the time of the king's death it appeared the only form of government possible. But now, when great disputes arose in the parliament, he saw the need of some one being set, like a king, above all others. At last, when the measures of the parliament threatened to bring the country again into confusion, he suddenly entered the House of Commons with a troop of soldiers, and dissolved the parliament.

8. It was a violent act, and it was violently done. But in these peaceful days we can hardly understand the state of England in those stormy times, when years of civil war had troubled the land. After this event the party who supported Cromwell drew up the plan of a republican government, of which he was

to be the head, with the title of Lord Protector of the Commonwealth. He was king now in all but name, and he was fitted for a throne. Some wished him to have the crown, but others objected, so the idea was given up.

9. He lived in the palace of Whitehall in dignified but simple style, with the wife and children he so dearly loved, and with the old widowed mother to whom he was so dutiful a son; for all strong home affections found a place in that large heart. He allowed no disorder in his court, and he gathered around him all the most gifted men of the age. One of these was his secretary, John Milton, the great English poet, second only to Shakspeare.

10. Abroad he made himself respected and feared far and wide; and kings humbled themselves before the might of Oliver Cromwell. He ruled England with a firm, strong hand, though sometimes in a manner very arbitrary; but we must remember that the civil war had overthrown everything, and that many measures might be unavoidable then, which would be worse than foolish now. Still it would not be right to approve of all he said or did. There was much that was imperfect and faulty in his character; much that was questionable in his acts. But with all his defects he was great because he worked earnestly for others, seeking his country's good before his own, and because "he feared God and had no other fear."

11. There were many plots against Cromwell's life, but every one of them failed. He had passed through all his battles unwounded, and he was not to die by a murderer's hand. In 1658 his health

began to give way. Grief for the death of his favourite daughter, Mrs. Claypole, increased his illness, but at first he thought he should recover, and spoke of how much he would yet do for his country. But it soon became plain that he would die.

12. Great was the awe in men's hearts when this was known, and special prayers were offered up night and day for his recovery throughout the country. By the 2nd of September he was dying. A furious storm raged that night in London, and amidst its tumult the mighty Cromwell was passing away from all mortal strife. He was well content to die. He said—"I am a conqueror, and more than a conqueror, through Jesus Christ who strengtheneth me." His eldest and most promising son had died long before, whose death, he said, "went like a dagger to his heart"; and he now appointed his second son, Richard, to succeed him. On the 3rd of September, the day of his two great victories, "his happiest day," he died, in the 60th year of his age.

1. What measures were passed after the king's death?
2. In what parts of the empire was Charles II. proclaimed?
3. Where were the Scottish Royalists routed?
4. Where was Charles II. finally defeated?
5. What title was given to Cromwell?
6. When did he die?

RESTORATION OF THE STUARTS.

CHAPTER XXXV.

CHARLES II. (1660—1685.)

1. RICHARD CROMWELL was quite unable to control the dissensions which broke out in the army and the parliament, and shrinking from an office for which he was not fit, he soon resigned the Protectorship. Then General Monk treacherously endeavoured to bring back the late king's son. It was well indeed to restore the kingly rule so prized by Englishmen, and for which they longed, for they were tired of military government, and the strong hand which alone had kept order in the land was gone for ever.

2. Yet thoughtful men wished to act carefully, for they would not willingly throw away what had been dearly bought. But they differed among themselves as to what it was best to do, and meanwhile Monk and his party were very busy, and so it came to pass that Charles the Second, a man with little conscience, and less heart, was given the crown of England, without perhaps all the precautions that might have been taken for the future.

3. The popular excitement was unbounded. With a tremendous outburst of enthusiasm, with peals of bells, and firing of guns, Charles the Second was welcomed home on his 30th birthday, the 29th of May,

1660. Had he been a good man he might have had a glorious reign. But he was utterly selfish. He cared for his own pleasure, and for little else. Merry and witty he was a cheerful companion, but he lived a bad, heartless life. He liked to have around him those who were as reckless as himself; and soon his court was thronged with worthless men and women, who alone found favour in his eyes.

4. Times were changed indeed. Oliver Cromwell made it the fashion to live a manly, Christian life. In Charles the Second's time it was fashionable to lead a life of folly and vice. There were many persons who had imitated the manners and conversation of the Puritans without possessing their religion. Such soon changed their ways under Charles the Second; and far and wide spread the evil influence of the court. Still there were good men even there, though they had little power, and there were countless peaceful homes in England which it could not corrupt.

5. Twenty-nine of Charles the First's judges were condemned to death, ten of whom were executed, with circumstances of great brutality. They went to their doom as cheerfully as to a festival, quite willing to die for England even as they had lived for her; for though they were in many things fanatical and mistaken, yet they were brave and true as steel. The remaining nineteen had their lives spared, but were ruined and imprisoned.

6. Sir Harry Vane, a distinguished Commonwealth man, who had taken no part in the trial of the king, and whose life Charles II. had promised to spare, was beheaded. However erroneous some of his opinions

might be, he was a man of lofty virtues, and died with calm courage, saying—"Ten thousand deaths rather than defile my conscience." If Charles II. had been a dutiful son, one could almost honour him if he felt that he could never pardon his father's death; but, knowing what he was, it is impossible to believe that love for his father's memory had much to do with his revenge.

7. Though Charles cared so little about religion, yet at first he would have granted toleration—a good act, whatever his motives, but the bigotry of some of his subjects hindered him. No one could justly blame him for restoring the Church of England to its former position as the Established Church; for it was the religion which most of his people preferred. In Scotland nearly all the inhabitants were Presbyterians, but not so in England. The English Puritans long remained in the Church, and, when they left it, did not become Presbyterians. All kinds of sects had appeared during the civil war, but the greater part of the nation liked the Church best.

8. But Charles behaved very shamefully to the Presbyterians, for he broke solemn promises which he had made them. Two thousand of their ministers gave up their livings for conscience' sake when the Act of Uniformity was passed; and all Nonconformists, which was the name then given to Dissenters, whether Puritans or others, were harshly treated. It was the foolish old attempt to make men think alike.

9. It is true that the Presbyterians would have been just as persecuting if they had had the upper hand. It is also true that during the Civil War the

parliament had turned numbers of clergyman out of their livings; and the Puritans who emigrated to America to escape persecution persecuted others terribly when they got there. There were a few men in the Church and among the Dissenters who saw that *all* persecution was wrong; but most, even of good men, were still under the delusion that it was doing God service to punish those whom they thought mistaken in religion. Cromwell had carried out religious liberty as far as he possibly could; but no sect fully approved of this except the Society of Friends or Quakers.

10. In 1665 a frightful plague broke out in London. In five months one hundred thousand persons died. Every house in which there were any ill of the plague was marked with a cross and the words—"Lord have mercy upon us!"—and no one in it was allowed to come out to mix with other people. Those who were rich enough to remove fled for their lives from the death-stricken city; and grass grew in the quiet and deserted streets. At length, after a tremendous storm, the pestilence ceased.

11. London was at that time a very dirty, badly-built city. Most of the houses, unless they were very grand ones, were built of wood. The streets were extremely narrow and crooked; they were unpaved, and always wet, but after heavy rain they were deep in mud and water. Now it is one of God's laws that we cannot live without fresh air and cleanliness, and where streets are filthy, and houses undrained and unaired, there disease is sure to come.

12. The next year an awful fire raged in London.

For more than three days it went on burning, and the nights were terrible with light. It began in a baker's house, and a high wind caused it to spread rapidly. People had to fly from their houses, and thousands were left without a roof to cover them; eighty-seven churches were destroyed, and more than eighteen thousand houses. The misery and loss caused by this fire were very great, and yet it did good too, for when the houses were built again they were made of better materials, and the streets were widened, and thus became healthier.

13. Before long Charles and his government began a bitterly cruel persecution in Scotland, where nearly all the people are Presbyterians. They were at that time called Covenanters because of the agreement or covenant they had made, never to give up their religion. At last, in desperation, they took up arms in self-defence, and then no mercy was shown them. They used to meet for worship, with weapons in their hands, in lonely places among their mountains, and sometimes the king's troops would come galloping down upon them, and the heathery hills would be stained with their blood.

14. Many of the Covenanters were hung, some were tortured, others were shot before their own doors, but they died fearlessly, undaunted by suffering, with their last words declaring their faith in Christ, and their more than willingness to die for him. Some of these were men saintly in their holiness; and though many of the Covenanters were often bigoted and violent, yet they were all faithful unto death for what they believed to be true. The Dissenters in England

were persecuted too, but to a much smaller extent. Still they were often cruelly imprisoned, and ill-treated in different ways.

15. Charles's brother, James, Duke of York, was a Roman Catholic, and there was a great and reasonable dread in England that if he became king he would overthrow the Protestant religion. This fear so filled men's minds that they were ready to believe anything about Catholic plots; and some very bad men invented a most wicked story, and swore that some Catholics had planned to murder the king, and ruin the church. The country was wild with alarm, remembering the Gunpowder Plot, and even good men believed the tale.

16. Several persons suffered death for this pretended plot, and others were imprisoned. One of those executed was Lord Stafford, a Roman Catholic nobleman. On the scaffold, he declared his innocence, and the people standing round were so convinced of the truth of what he said, that they exclaimed with tears—"We believe you, my lord. God bless you, my lord." The parliament in their alarm passed measures which shut out any Catholic peers from the House of Lords, having already excluded Catholic gentlemen from the House of Commons. Now this was persecution, for no man ought to lose his rights as an Englishman because of his religious opinions.

17. It is true that there were plotters against England's honour and safety; not the men whom false witnesses sent to death, but the king and his brother, and some around them who wanted to overthrow the Protestant religion, who were serving

France instead of England, and trying to govern in an unlawful manner. The parliament had strong suspicions of the Duke of York, and tried to make a law that he should not succeed to the throne because he was a Catholic; an attempt which naturally made him very angry. In these days there would be no question about it; for now it is wisely required that the King of England shall be educated in the Established Church.

18. All good men mourned over the state of England, and longed to alter it. One of these was Lord William Russell, who consulted privately with a number of noblemen and gentlemen on the matter. But when he found that they were likely to act in a manner that he could not approve, (for some of them were unprincipled men, and most of them were less scrupulous than himself) he ceased to confer with them. Yet he was arrested on a charge of high treason.

19. There would have been time for Lord Russell to escape; but he said that he had committed no crime, and he scorned to flee. He was brought to trial, and in court he was told that he might have a servant to write down what the lawyers and others said. He answered, "My wife is here to do it." And when the Lady Rachel Russell, one of the noblest and truest of wives, rose up to help him, "a thrill of anguish ran through the assembly." Through all the awful hours of that trial, on which hung the life precious to her beyond every other, Lady Russell calmed her own great woe that she might serve her husband.

20. He was condemned to death, for Charles

eared his virtues, and cared little for justice. Lord Russell was not afraid to die, but he was sorely grieved for those whom he must leave, for his wife and three little children, and his father and mother. His home had been as happy as perfect love could make it, but he would enter there no more, for all the efforts of his heroic wife and his poor father, the Earl of Bedford, were vain to save him. The night before his execution, Lady Russell took leave of him without a tear. For his sake she kept down the sorrow with which her heart was breaking, that she might not add to his agony in that last earthly parting.

21. When she was gone he said—"Now the bitterness of death is past." The scaffold and the block were yet before him, but they were light troubles compared with the anguish of parting from her. Lady Russell lived to be eighty-six, through the many years of her sorrowful life shedding the soft light of her Christian womanhood on all around her. Though no woe could come again so great as that which she had already known, yet she had many other bitter griefs to bear. Her only son and one of her two daughters died before her; and she lost many friends and relatives besides. But at last her time of release came, and she was laid to rest by her husband's side at Woburn Abbey,—those whom Death had once parted, for ever united by his hand.

22. Soon after Lord Russell's death, Algernon Sidney, an eminent republican, was accused of treason, and unjustly sentenced to death, and went to his doom as "one who came to triumph, not to suffer." Charles II. died in 1685, in the fifty-fifth year of his

age. His unhappy, neglected wife, Catherine of Braganza, had no children, so he was succeeded by his brother James.

23. A most important measure, called the "Habeas Corpus Act," was confirmed in this reign. It forbids any Englishman, accused of a crime, lying in prison without being brought to trial. In this reign lived John Bunyan, a famous Puritan tinker, who wrote the beautiful story, "Pilgrim's Progress." He was persecuted as a Dissenter, and imprisoned for twelve years, and wrote part of his book in gaol.

1. Who was very active in bringing back Charles II.?
2. Give some account of the plague.
3. Give some account of the great fire.
4. Who were the Covenanters, and how treated?
5. What false story led to harsh treatment of Roman Catholics?
6. Who was Lord William Russell; and what was his fate?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

JAMES II. (1685—1688.)

1. JAMES II. was sincere in his attachment to the Catholic religion, but he was harsh and pitiless in character. He began his reign by declaring that he would govern according to law, and maintain the Established Church; but he broke his promise immediately. There was consequently much discontent and alarm through the country, which encouraged the Duke of Monmouth to rebel. He was a son of Charles II., but as the queen was not his mother he had no claim to the throne; still being a Protestant and agreeable in manner, many preferred him to James.

2. Monmouth, who had been for some time in Holland, got a very small army together, and landed at Lyme, in Dorsetshire. At Taunton he was most warmly received. Flowers were strewn before him, and twenty-six young girls met him with presents of flags which they had worked, and a Bible. But he was not joined by noblemen and gentlemen, as he had expected.

3. There was not much fighting until he met the king's troops at Sedgmoor, in Somersetshire. There Monmouth was defeated, and there was a terrible slaughter among his followers, many of whom were poor country people who had scarcely any arms. Monmouth tried to escape, but he was found, half-starved, in a ditch. He implored the king to spare his life for the sake of their relationship; but James was not a man likely to listen to such an appeal, and he sent his nephew to the scaffold. When Monmouth found that there was no hope of life, all signs of weakness left him, and he calmly died, at the age of thirty-five.

4. One of the king's officers, Colonel Kirke, acted with great barbarity after the battle of Sedgmoor; and when the brutal Judge Jeffreys came to the West of England to try those who had taken part in Monmouth's rebellion, he sent people to the gallows by hundreds. One brave, good old lady, Mrs. Lisle, was put to death because she had for one night hidden two of Monmouth's followers from the king's troops. Long did people in the neighbourhood shudder at the remembrance of Judge Jeffreys' visit, and call it "the bloody assize."

5. Such cruelties as these did not make James more beloved, and his subjects had other reasons for quarrelling with him. He had done away with all the laws against Dissenters—a most excellent act in itself; but he had no right to alter laws without consulting parliament, and besides it seems very plain that his motive was simply to prepare the way for making the Roman Catholic Church the Established Church in England. For these reasons many persons opposed the measure; but some only objected to it because they were not willing that others should have the religious liberty which they claimed for themselves.

6. James ordered this law to be read from the pulpit in all churches, but people said truly that it was not a law at all until parliament had approved of it; and therefore clergyman refused to read it. Seven of the bishops went with a petition to the king, explaining their reasons for refusal, which made him very angry, and he sent them to the Tower. They were taken in a boat down the Thames, to the Tower, and thousands of people were on both banks of the river, who, kneeling down, begged a blessing of the bishops, and with tears prayed for their safety.

7. The excitement at their trial was intense. The hall was crowded with noblemen and gentlemen, and all who could get in; and when the seven bishops were declared "Not Guilty," Westminster Hall rang with cheers, which were taken up outside, and went on far into the city, and even to Hounslow Heath; where the soldiers were encamped, who sent their answer back in cheers as loud, for all men seemed

rejoicing as with one voice. When night came, London seemed in a blaze with bonfires, and all the church bells were set ringing. This attack on the Church roused the country to such a degree that it settled James's fate.

8. In different ways he showed his intention to put the Roman Catholic Church in the place of the Church of England, and to govern without consulting parliament; and his subjects were resolved that these things should not be. They would not upset the throne again, but they would place a king on it who would govern according to law, and maintain the Protestant religion.

9. Now, James had two grown-up daughters, Mary and Anne, the children of his first wife, who was dead. Mary was married to William, Prince of Orange, the ruler of Holland, whose mother was a daughter of Charles I., so that William was both nephew and son-in-law to James, and heir to the English throne after James's children. In William of Orange the people of England found the king they wanted. He and his wife were both Protestants; and a great number of the leading men in England offered him the crown, and he sailed from Holland with a large fleet.

10. James found very few to stand by him, and some who had professed to be his friends treacherously deserted him in his calamity. When he found that the Princess Anne had left him he burst into tears, exclaiming—"God help me! my very children have forsaken me." He sent his young Italian wife and his infant son to France, and in a few hours he fol-

owed them. As he passed through London for the last time, those who saw him could not restrain their pity, though they were right glad to see him go. So ended James the Second's reign, and thus the Prince of Orange became William III. of England, and this was "the Glorious Revolution of 1688."

11. Before closing this chapter I will give you a little account of the customs, &c., during the reigns of the four Stuart kings. By the time of James I. there was a great improvement in the furniture of grand houses, which was very skilfully and elegantly made. Walls were now papered; and the nobility and gentry adorned their rooms with fine paintings. Carpets were brought from Turkey and Persia, but at first they were oftener used for covering tables than floors. The style of dress, and the manner of living, in this reign were very extravagant. Gambling became very common, for the habits of James the First's court were widely different from the manly, dignified manners of Queen Elizabeth's.

12. In the early part of James the First's reign the nobility and gentry in the country lived much as they did in Elizabeth's time. They rose at daybreak, and after prayers and breakfast, at which they drank plenty of ale, the gentlemen would go hunting, while the ladies looked after their servants, gave food to the poor at the castle gate, made herb medicines and preserves, set their waiting-maids to spin (for there were no great manufactories in those days) and when they had nothing else to do would spin also. They did not read much, for they had very few books. Those who left their country-houses, and went to London to

James's court, often wasted all their fortune in gambling and other excesses.

13. The unhappy Charles I. was too refined to like such dissipation and disorders around him as had prevailed in his father'e time. At first he was able to check them, but when the Civil War broke out many of his courtiers became as riotous, as swearing and drunken as ever, for they seemed to take pleasure in being as unlike as possible to the grave, austere Puritans.

14. The dress of gentlemen in Charles the First's time was very handsome and highly ornamented. They wore large and beautiful lace collars over doublets or short coats made of silk or satin. They had graceful feathers in their hats, and wore their hair long and curled. The Puritans cropped their hair short, and the women among them wore caps or head-coverings of some kind; so that during the Civil War the manner of wearing the hair told to which party persons, whether men or women, belonged.

15. The Puritans generally dressed very plainly. Cromwell, when he was Protector, lived and dressed in a style becoming his high station, but he discouraged all extravagance. Coffee was first used in England in his time. Until then the brutal amusements of bull-baiting and bear-baiting had been common in England, but he forbade them.

16. In Charles the Second's reign, dress was very rich and handsome. Men wore enormous curled wigs which came down over their shoulders, as perhaps you have seen in pictures; and ladies had their own or false hair in ringlets on their necks. One

frightful fashion then was for the ladies to wear patches of black plaster, cut into different shapes, on their faces. Duelling was terribly common in this reign. In Charles the Second's time, tea was first used in England. Some persons tried roasting the leaves and eating them, like spinach, for they did not understand that it was to make a drink. You may guess that at first they did not at all like it.

1. Who headed a rebellion?
2. What became of its leader?
3. What change in religion did James desire?
4. What act cost him his throne?
5. Who was William of Orange?
6. What led to the choice of him as ruler?

CHAPTER XXXVII.

William and Mary (1688—1702).

1. William III. had proved himself to be a very remarkable man, while he was yet extremely young, in his own country of Holland. At the age of twenty-two he had taken the lead in defending her against the powerful French king, who was draining France of men and money in the attempt to get portions of his neighbours' territories. William firmly resisted him, saying that if he failed there was one way by which he could avoid seeing his country ruined—he could die in the last ditch.

2. Though he broke the sacred ties of kindred in accepting his uncle's crown, I think that we can hardly blame him under the peculiar circumstances. He and James had never been friendly, though they were so

nearly related, for James had taken the part of the French king, who was William's worst enemy; and William did not seek the throne. The nation asked him to take it, and save the country when James was ruining it. William III. was thirty-eight when he was crowned King of England.

3. The terms Whig and Tory had come into use in Charles the Second's time. Those were called Tories who thought most of the king's rights, and the Whigs were those who thought most of the nation's rights. The Whig party were especially active in bringing over William. Those persons who would not swear to serve him, but still considered James their king, were called Non-jurors. In religious matters William was no persecutor, but truly desirous of giving liberty of conscience to all. He was himself a Calvinist.

4. The sovereign power was entirely in his hands, but his wife was also crowned by the title of Mary II. She was a beautiful, accomplished woman, and devotedly attached to her husband. When he and James became opposed to each other, duty and inclination both bound her to William's cause, who of course had the first claim on her; but I should have liked her better if she had shown greater sorrow for her father's misfortunes, though probably she felt much more grief for his troubles than she showed to others. She was twenty-six when she became Queen of England.

5. In Ireland, where nearly all the inhabitants were Catholics, there was a strong party in favour of James, and also in the Highlands of Scotland. The Highlanders, who lived a wild life in the mountains of the north, were almost like a separate nation, and had little

intercourse with the people of the south of Scotland. The Highlanders knew little about the matter, except that James was a Stuart, and therefore his family was of Scottish origin, and for this reason they took his side.

6. All the people in Great Britain and Ireland who did so were called Jacobites. The French king helped James with vessels and soldiers, and he went with them to Ireland, where there was a deal of fighting. The Protestant town of Londonderry, or Derry, as it was then called, was besieged by James's army. The inhabitants said that they would rather die than give up the town, and a Presbyterian minister, named Walker, was chief in defending Derry. Soon their provisions were all exhausted, and they had to live on rats, mice, tallow, and other disgusting food, but they would not surrender though they were starving.

7. Derry is on a river near the sea, and William tried to send vessels up to the city with food; but James's soldiers so guarded both sides of the river that it seemed well-nigh impossible for the vessels to get there. You can fancy what the brave, enduring people felt when they saw the white sails in the distance, and knew that they were bringing all they needed, but feared that the precious gifts would never reach their hungry lips. With prayers and tears they watched the vessels coming up the river, while James's troops fired on them from the banks. But through all perils they came safely in at last, and Derry was saved; but more than eight thousand persons had perished there by famine and disease, or had been killed by the enemy.

8. Afterwards William came to Ireland and took the command of his army himself, leaving Mary to govern in England. She ruled wisely, though with a most weary, troubled heart, not having time even to weep, she said. She was terribly anxious for her husband's safety and success, and dreaded that some evil might happen to her father. William's victory at the battle of the Boyne made James's cause hopeless; and when the war ended William acted liberally and wisely towards the Irish; though the parliament afterwards passed very harsh, persecuting laws against the Catholics in Ireland.

9. After James's troops left Ireland they still fought abroad by sea and land against William. The massacre of Glencoe was the most dreadful circumstance that happened at home in connection with this contest. The Highlanders who had fought for James were promised a pardon if, by a certain day, they would swear to be obedient to William. One chief, named Macdonald, living in the lonely valley of Glencoe, was hindered by a storm from going to take the oath till the day after the time fixed.

10. Now Macdonald and his followers, like the other Highland clans at that time, were very lawless, and in the habit of carrying off their neighbours' cattle. Thus he had enemies, and some of them were so wicked as to tell William that Macdonald had never taken the oath at all, and that he was a dangerous rebel. Then the king gave orders to send a band of soldiers against him. These soldiers were led by some of his enemies, who pretended that they came as friends, and Macdonald, who thought himself quite

safe, believed them. But after they had been at Glencoe, for days, feasting all the while on the best their host could give them, they suddenly attacked Macdonald and his family in the night, killed all the men they could find, burnt the houses, and drove away the women and children. It was a horrible act, but it is not just to lay much of the blame on William, who was greatly deceived in the matter.

11. William's reign was a most important one for England, for from his time the rights of king and parliament were settled, but he had not much peace or comfort in it himself. He was harassed by violent disputes between the Whig and Tory parties, and by plots of the Jacobites, some of whom were so meanly wicked that they tried to murder him, which caused great indignation in England. He was cold and reserved in manner, and did not very easily make new friends, so that he was more valued than loved by his British subjects. He was not an Englishman; and though he served England well, his heart was most engaged in great schemes for humbling the formidable power of France, and strengthening the Protestant religion through Europe.

12. Now, to strengthen the Protestant countries was to spread freedom, and light, and knowledge. Most of the German princes were Protestants, and they joined England and Holland; and if all of them had been as wise and far-seeing as William, the terrible wars of this time might have been sooner ended. Perhaps no life in Europe was then so valuable as his.

13. In 1795 he lost his devoted wife. At the age of thirty-three she died of small-pox, which then,

when vaccination was unknown, was an awful disease. William was overwhelmed with sorrow, and mourned her loss most bitterly. He survived her for seven years. His health had always been very delicate, and at last he was nearly worn out with his great toils. The conflict with France, which had paused for a while, was about to begin again; but he felt his strength failing, and knew that he should never live to carry out all his plans.

14. When he paid his last visit to Holland, where he was always sure of a welcome, they were grieved to see how ill and worn he looked. In France it was said that the French king could do as he pleased if only William were gone. A fall from his horse hastened his end. But it seemed as if he must work whilst he lived. The day before his death, when his dying hand could no longer hold a pen, he signed with a stamp, some papers which could not become law without his signature. In the fifty-second year of his age he died with calmness and resignation, with Bentinck, Earl of Portland, beside him, his faithful friend from his boyhood to the last. Europe was now to be distracted with war again, but the turmoil could not reach him, where he lay at rest by Mary's side, in Westminster Abbey.

1. Give the meaning of the words Whig and Tory.
2. Who were called Non-jurors?
3. In what parts of the Empire were the Jacobites strongest?
4. What Irish Protestant town made a brave defence?
5. What battle finally ruined James?
6. Give some account of the Massacre of Glencoe.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ANNE (1702—1714).

1. ANNE, sister of Mary II., now became queen, at the age of thirty-seven. She was rather a weak-minded woman, and for many years she was entirely under the influence of the very clever, but violent, Duchess of Marlborough, and when she tired of the Duchess, she was ruled by other ladies-in-waiting. Her husband was Prince George of Denmark. She had several children, but all of them died young.

2. Before Anne had reigned two months the war with France, Spain, and Bavaria began. The renowned general, the Duke of Marlborough, was made commander of the armies of England, Holland, and the other Protestant countries, and many dreadful battles were fought, in which Marlborough gained extraordinary victories. The most celebrated was the battle at Blenheim, a little village in Bavaria, on the Danube. During this war the English and Dutch fleets, under Sir George Rooke, took the very strong fortress of Gibraltar from the Spaniards. It has ever since belonged to England, though great efforts have been made to take it from her. The war was ended by the Peace of Utrecht, 1713.

3. James II. had died in France before Anne's reign began; but when his son, her half-brother, grew up, he tried to regain the English throne. There were Jacobite gentlemen who had left home and country, and all that they possessed, to follow James in his

misfortunes, and these were faithful friends to his son; and there were many persons in Great Britain who, from different motives, took his side. The English generally called him the Pretender; and rumours of plots on his behalf disturbed the later years of Anne's life.

4. Many men illustrious for great talents of different kinds lived in her reign. One of these was Sir Isaac Newton (born 1642, died 1727). He made such marvellous scientific discoveries, that on a marble tablet in the room where he was born is written—

> "Nature and Nature's laws lay hid in night;
> God said, 'Let Newton be,' and all was light."

Yet with his wonderful knowledge he was very humble, feeling that there is much beyond the power of human learning which can never be known in this world.

5. He noticed everything, and thought about it. One day when in his garden, seeing an apple fall from a tree, he began to think *why* it fell downwards; and from this little circumstance he thought out one of his great discoveries, called the law of gravitation. When he was dying he said—"that it seemed to himself that he had been like a child picking up pebbles on the seashore, while the great ocean of truth lay all undiscovered before him."

6. In Anne's reign died Daniel Defoe, who wrote the beautiful story of "Robinson Crusoe." He was a good, brave man, and, as such, was pilloried, fined, and imprisoned for his fearless political writings. I must also mention Sir Christopher Wren, who planned St. Paul's Cathedral, in London. It was finished in this

reign, having been thirty-five years in building. When you go to St. Paul's you may see the monument to Sir Christopher Wren, and written on it in Latin these words—"If thou wouldst behold his monument, look around thee."

7. Dr. Isaac Watts, who wrote those pretty hymns for children, also lived about this time, and many other gifted men distinguished for their writings. The union of England and Scotland took place in this reign, that is the two countries began for the first time to have one parliament.

8. Anne died in 1714, having lost her husband some years before. It had been decided in parliament, before her death, that her successor should be George, Elector of Hanover, the nearest Protestant heir. He was the grandson of Elizabeth, Queen of Bohemia, daughter of James I.

1. Name three countries that fought against England.
2. Name the most famous battle, and by whom won?
3. What is the peace called which ended the war?
4. Who claimed Anne's throne?
5. Who was Sir Isaac Newton?
6. Who succeeded Anne?

Period the Fifth.

THE BRUNSWICK LINE

(1714.)

THE BRUNSWICK LINE.

George I.	1714—1727
George II.	1727—1760
George III.	1760—1820
George IV.	1820—1830
William IV.	1830—1837
Victoria Alexandrina . . .	1837—

CHAPTER XXXIX.

GEORGE I. (1714-1727).

1. The new king was fifty-four when he was crowned. It is said that he possessed "the courage and obstinacy of his race," and considerable abilities for business. But he was unprincely in his manners, and violent when angry, though pleasant enough at other times. His only son, then about thirty, landed with him. But they were on miserable terms, for the young prince felt bitterly what he thought the cruel treatment of his mother.

2. Indeed there is nothing pleasant to tell of George the First's domestic life. He brought no wife with him. In a lonely castle in Germany lived in solitude the beautiful Sophia Dorothea, whom he had married in her girlhood, and who, unhappy and neglected in his father's court, had acted foolishly and thoughtlessly. But her husband seemed to think that her conduct had been very wrong. At any rate, for thirty-two years she lived apart from him, a prisoner in her castle.

3. George I. had been but a short time on the throne when the Jacobites at last raised an insurrection in Scotland on behalf of the Pretender, who landed there. At the same time there was a rising in his favour in Northumberland. The latter came to nothing, but there were pitched battles in Scotland, in which the Highlanders, after fighting bravely for the Pretender, were routed, when he embarked for France.

4. I wish I could say that the government acted mercifully when their success was sure; but the parliament and nation were alarmed and furious at the way in which the peace and order of the country had been imperilled, and the punishment of the rebels was cruelly severe. Many of the poorer prisoners suffered in different ways, and five noblemen were condemned to death, though only two of them were executed.

5. One of the two was the young and gallant Earl of Derwentwater, who had been persuaded to take part in the Northumberland outbreak. He was only twenty-eight, and until then had lived happily in his beautiful old castle. He was much beloved in his own neighbourhood, and his fate was long and bitterly lamented there. Great efforts were made to save him. His beautiful young wife, who, it is said, had encouraged him to help the Pretender, went herself to the king to beg her husband's life, but in vain.

6. An old ballad makes the earl say—

"Farewell, farewell, my lady dear,
Ill, ill thou counselledst me;
I never more may see the babe
That smiles upon thy knee!
And fare-thee-well, my bonnie gray steed,
That carried me aye so free;
I wish I had been asleep in my bed
Last time I mounted thee.
The warning-bell now bids me cease;
My trouble's nearly o'er;
Yon sun that rises from the sea
Shall rise on me no more!"

7. Lord Nithsdale, a Scottish nobleman, who was also condemned to death, was saved by the skill and

courage of his heroic wife. He was imprisoned in the Tower, and the night before his intended execution Lady Nithsdale came to take leave of him. Then she quickly dressed him in women's clothes, like her servant, and he went out of the Tower, hiding his face with a handkerchief. The brave wife watched with a beating heart, as he passed safely, disguised as a woman, through the soldiers who guarded the Tower. He remained in concealment for some days, and then, dressed in livery, rode down to Dover unnoticed among the servants of the Venetian ambassador. He went abroad, where his faithful wife followed him.

8. George I. died suddenly in his carriage, during a visit to Hanover, in 1727.

1. Of what line was this king the first?
2. Where did the Pretender land, and for what purpose?
3. In what English county was there a rising?
4. What nobleman was executed?
5. How did Lord Nithsdale escape?

CHAPTER XL.

GEORGE II. (1727—1760.)

1. AT the age of forty-three, George II. ascended the throne. Like his father he was much more German than English in his ideas, and resembled him in many qualities of mind. His wife, Queen Caroline, was a German princess; and an interesting, graceful, clever woman. While she always yielded to his will, and sacrificed everything else to promote his wishes, yet by her great influence over him she really guided

most of his actions, and he rarely went wrong when he followed her advice. She died ten years after he became king.

2. His eldest son, Frederick, Prince of Wales, was as undutiful to him as he had been to his father. George II. was very fond of his younger son, the Duke of Cumberland, but he seems to have always unnaturally neglected the Prince of Wales, who was very badly brought up. He appears, indeed, to have been weak and unamiable, and the fact that he was slighted by his parents was not likely to make him better.

3. In the early part of George the Second's reign he was engaged in war with Spain and France; and at the battle of Dettingen he and his son, the Duke of Cumberland, were present, and distinguished themselves by their bravery. When this war was ended a long peace blessed the country.

4. I have told you of the Pretender's attempt on England. He never again made the trial in person; but his son, Charles Edward, the young Pretender, dared a last struggle to win back the crown which no Stuart was ever to wear again. He landed in Scotland, and the rebellion of 1745 broke out. He proclaimed his father king, in Edinburgh, and at the head of his Highland followers he encountered the royal troops, who were shamefully defeated at Prestonpans.

5. Colonel Gardiner, an eminently Christian soldier, was in the king's army, and when he saw it broken and flying, he placed himself at the head of a little band of "true-bred Englishmen," and stood his ground, though surrounded by foes, until he fell

mortally wounded. Charles Edward and his party were of course encouraged by this success, and actually crossed into England, and entered Carlisle, which surrendered to them. Meantime the king had sent an army under the Duke of Cumberland to drive him back.

6. Charles Edward quickly retreated into Scotland, and finally a battle was fought on the lonely plains of Culloden Moor, where his Highland army was cut to pieces, and he fled from the field for his life. But it was a disgraceful victory to the Duke of Cumberland, who treated the conquered with great brutality, so that the Scotch nicknamed him "The Butcher;" and the people of England, loathing his cruelty, confirmed the odious title.

7. The government offered a reward of £30,000 to any one who should bring them Charles Edward; but though he wandered for weeks in the Highlands, in poverty and distress, sometimes almost barefooted, and trusted himself again and again to different persons, some of them rich, and some very poor, yet to their everlasting honour there was not one man found who would betray him for the sake of the money.

8. Instead of betraying him they helped him by every means in their power, and hid him from his pursuers. Once, when surrounded by enemies, he escaped by help of a young lady, Flora Macdonald, who had him dressed as her waiting-maid. Then taking him with her in a boat, they were rowed safely to the Isle of Skye. At last he and many of his followers reached France. Charles Edward's misfortunes have made him interesting; but there seems to have been little in his character deserving admiration or respect.

9. In 1754 began what is called the Seven Years'

War, in which all the chief countries of Europe were engaged. By 1757 the celebrated Lord Clive had taken nearly all the French possessions in India, and laid the foundation of England's empire there. In America, General Wolfe took Quebec from the French by climbing with his soldiers, in the night, up the Heights of Abraham—a precipice so steep that no one thought it possible they could get up that way. In the battle which followed he and the French general were both killed.

10. George II. died suddenly in 1760. His eldest son had died some years earlier, so he was succeeded by his grandson, George III.

11. We will end this chapter with a brief description of the dress, &c., common during the last four reigns. In William the Third's time the fashionable costume for men was the same as at the end of Charles the Second's reign,—coats cut square, and very long waistcoats, and stockings visible to the knee, long neckties made of lace, and buckles on their shoes; they also wore hats turned up and ornamented with feathers, and still the enormous wigs. Ladies had their petticoats flounced and otherwise adorned, and the gown open in front and fastened back to show them. They also wore very high head-dresses.

12. In Anne's reign there was a great change in the dress of women. They gave up the towering head-gear for a simpler, prettier style of head-dress; and they began to wear great hoops to keep out their gowns. In the time of George I. smaller wigs were worn, but it became a more common fashion to powder the hair, so as to make it look grey or white.

13. Under George II. light blue cloth coats were

fashionable for gentlemen, who also got more into the habit of tying up their hair with ribbon into a long twist, called a pig-tail, which hung down on their necks. The dress of the ladies in this reign was generally elegant; peaked bodies, laced in front so as to show white stomachers beneath; full skirts without the hideous hoops, and sleeves loose from the elbow. They often wore gipsy hats.

14. The streets of London were still very bad—ill-paved, and full of filthy puddles. At night they were lighted by glimmering oil-lamps, which just made darkness visible. When gentlemen and ladies went out after dark they employed lads who were always in waiting, called link-boys, who carried torches before them. You may still see on the rails outside some old houses in London, places for holding these torches.

15. Gaming was still terribly common; for many of the evil practices of Charles the Second's court still rankled in the country. But these bad habits prevailed mostly in London and in large towns. Country gentlemen lived, as they generally have in England, manly, rational lives. Ladies were very slightly educated in the latter part of this period.

1. In what war was George II. soon engaged?
2. Who was Charles Edward?
3. Where did the rebellion break out?
4. Where were the royal troops defeated?
5. Where was Charles Edward's army destroyed?
6. How did he escape?
7. What was Wolfe's last exploit?

CHAPTER XLI.

GEORGE III. (1760—1820).

1. GEORGE THE THIRD'S reign extended to nearly sixty years, the longest in English History. He was a much more estimable man than the two sovereigns that went before him, and a good deal of respect and affection were felt for him by his subjects all through his life. They were remarkable times in which he lived, and a great many very remarkable men, illustrious for their talents, shed a splendour over his reign, —the Earl of Chatham, his son William Pitt, Charles James Fox, Edmund Burke, Lord Brougham, Sir Walter Scott, and a host of others.

2. In 1776 England lost her North American Colonies. At different times many English people had emigrated to them. Some Dutch, Germans, and others had also gone thither, but the greater number were English, and our language was spoken there. But in this reign these Colonies were unreasonably taxed by England. They resisted, and a war broke out, which was ended by England acknowledging the independence of the Colonies. They formed themselves into a Republic, called the United States. In 1798 a rebellion broke out in Ireland.

3. In 1787 the terrible French Revolution began. The king then reigning in France, Louis the XVI., was a well-meaning man, but some of the monarchs who had ruled before him had frightfully misgoverned the country, and the people had become most wretched and degraded. On the innocent head of Louis XVI.

fell the punishment earned by the crimes of his ancestors. A rebellion broke out, and the peasantry, brutalized by oppression, behaved like wild beasts.

4. The king was executed; so also was his beautiful wife, Marie Antoinette, whose hair turned grey in one night of horror. His little boy was imprisoned, and treated with villainous cruelty, until death set him free. This time is called in history "The Reign of Terror;" and France was deluged with blood. Those who would have put a stop to these horrors were killed or imprisoned, unless they fled for their lives.

5. After the execution of the king, the French declared war against England, and for many years peace seemed to have forsaken Europe. There was then in the French army a young officer named Napoleon Bonaparte, who possessed extraordinary genius. He was idolized by his soldiers; and when France was sick of her misery, the government was placed in his hands, and at last he was crowned emperor. He put down the atrocities which had made France infamous; and then, instead of devoting his talents to her good, he gave himself up to the desire of being a great conqueror.

6. He wished to conquer the world if he could; above all he wished to conquer England. But though every other country in Europe felt the tread of his countless hosts, they never set foot on English soil. While Napoleon was gaining great victories over the Austrians, Germans, &c., England was winning great battles from him at sea, under many distinguished naval commanders, of whom the most remarkable was Nelson. He was mortally wounded in his victory of

Trafalgar, after sending his last message to his men —"England expects every man to do his duty."

7. In 1808 English troops were sent under the great general, the Duke of Wellington, to drive Napoleon's armies out of Spain, and they did drive them out. In 1810 Napoleon invaded Russia, and the Russians burnt their city of Moscow to prevent his taking it. Then he had to retreat in the bitter snow and frost of a Russian winter, and his poor soldiers perished by tens of thousands in that awful journey. He met with other disasters afterwards; and in 1814 the armies of England, and those allied with her, made him resign his throne.

8. He went to the little Island of Elba; but in a year he was back again in France, and reigned there for a brief "hundred days." Then the allied armies, led by the Duke of Wellington, encountered Napoleon on the field of Waterloo, on the 18th of June, 1815. Before the day was over the grand army of Napoleon was routed, and Europe had rest at last. He died a prisoner in the Island of St. Helena.

9. In 1807 England gave up the horrible slave trade. During two centuries thousands of negroes had been taken by British vessels from Africa; and after fearful suffering on the voyage were made slaves in the West India colonies. People were accustomed to this cruel trade, and did not think how wicked it was. But in this reign some good men began to think, and they never rested till, after years of toil, parliament passed a law forbidding the slave trade. To Thomas Clarkson and the gifted William Wilberforce belongs the chief glory of its abolition.

10. In this reign lived that great benefactor of the world, Dr. Jenner. Until his time small-pox was a most terrible disease, and tens of thousands died of it. He found that milk-maids often took cow-pox from their cows, and then never had the small-pox. He thought about this, till he discovered vaccination, or a way of giving cow-pox to any one; so that all persons as well as milk-maids may now be safe from small-pox.

11. Until this reign there had been scarcely any provision for the education of the poor, and they could rarely read or write. Dr. Bell established National Schools for all children connected with the Church. About the same time Joseph Lancaster began the system of the British and Foreign School Society for all children, whether their parents were Churchmen or Dissenters. George III. was very desirous of extending education, and said—"I wish that every poor child in my dominions may be able to read his Bible."

12. After National and British Schools came Infant Schools; and now all these are scattered over every part of England, bestowing blessings upon thousands. Many good men—some gone to their reward, and some still living—have worked hard that all English children might enjoy the priceless gift of education.

13. George III. died in 1820, in the eighty-second year of his age. For some years before his death his mind was so affected by illness that he was unable to govern, and his son became regent.

1. What Colonies did England lose in 1776?
2. Who was Napoleon?
3. Why is Cape Trafalgar famous?
4. Where was Napoleon finally defeated?
5. What trade did Parliament forbid?
6. What schools were established?

CHAPTER XLII.

GEORGE IV. (1820—1830.)

1. THERE is nothing praiseworthy to tell you of George IV.; but I will mention a few of the principal events of his reign. One of these was the passing by parliament of the Emancipation Bill, by which they did away with the persecuting law of Charles the Second's time, that shut out Catholics from the House of Commons.

2. Many persons disapproved of this change, saying that it was better to have all members of parliament Protestants; and so it might be. But if all persecution is wrong, as it surely is, then it must be right to give English Roman Catholics the same privileges that other Englishmen have; and what is right is always wisest in the end.

3. Parliament also repealed the Test and Corporation Acts, which had prevented Dissenters from holding many important situations. In this measure for advancing religious liberty Earl Russell took a leading part.

4. In 1827 was fought the naval battle of Navarino, in which England, France, and Russia, forced Turkey to give up Greece, which had long struggled desperately for freedom, and which the Turks had treated with the greatest cruelty.

5. George IV. married the Princess Caroline of Brunswick, but utterly neglected her. They were miserably unhappy together, and soon separated; but the poor queen had no peace for the rest of her life.

Their only child, the Princess Charlotte, was dearly loved in England. She had a troubled youth, for the king tried to separate her from the queen, as if it were possible that a loving daughter could be content to be parted from her own mother.

6. In 1816 the Princess Charlotte married the excellent Leopold, the late King of the Belgians, and after little more than a year of happiness she died when only twenty-one. All England seemed to go into mourning for their fair young princess, so great and wide-spread was the sorrow for her loss.

7. George IV. died in 1830, aged sixty-seven.

1. What was the Emancipation Bill?
2. Why were the Test Acts, &c., repealed?
3. Give some account of the battle of Navarino.
4. To whom was the Princess Charlotte married?
5. When did she die?

CHAPTER XLIII.

William IV. (1830—1837).

1. George IV. was succeeded by his brother, William IV., who had been in the navy for many years. He began as a midshipman, the lowest rank ever held in the navy by sons of gentlemen. His wife, Queen Adelaide, was an estimable German princess.

2. The most noted event of this reign was the passing of the Reform Bill, a measure which enabled many large towns to send members to parliament that had not the power before. It also gave votes to many persons who had none until then, besides other alterations. This act caused tremendous excitement, till at last it became law in 1832, when the late Earl Grey

was Prime Minister. The fame of passing this great measure is most associated with the name of Earl Russell, who was then Lord John Russell.

3. On the 1st of August, 1834, England freed all her slaves. I told you how the slave trade was abolished, so that no more slaves could be brought from Africa; but those negroes who were already slaves in the West Indies continued to be so. The late Sir Thomas Fowell Buxton was the leader in striving for that righteous measure by which slavery was abolished on every foot of ground belonging to England.

4. On the last night of July the slaves gathered in their churches and chapels throughout the British West Indies, and when the clock struck twelve they rose from their knees free. The English Government paid twenty millions of money to the owners of the slaves, to buy their liberty—a noble deed, worthy of everlasting remembrance.

5. It is England's glory now, that wherever her flag waves, all men are free. Negroes who are held slaves by other nations, if they can get to England, or to any place belonging to England, are free from the very moment that their feet touch ground over which Queen Victoria rules.

6. In 1830 was opened the first railway in England. One of the first locomotive engines was made by a Cornishman named Trevithick; but the man who may be said really to have invented railways was George Stephenson, a working miner in Northumberland. The great engineer James Watt, a native of Scotland, who was in fact the inventor of the steam-engine, had completed his discoveries several years before.

7. William IV. died in 1837, in the sixty-second year of his age, and was succeeded by his niece, our beloved Queen.

1. What Bill was passed in 1832, and by whom?
2. When was slavery abolished?
3. Who was James Watt?
4. When was the first railway opened?
5. Who was George Stephenson?

CHAPTER XLIV.

VICTORIA ALEXANDRINA (1837).

1. VICTORIA ALEXANDRINA was the only child of the Duke of Kent. Her father died when she was too young to know her loss; but she had the priceless blessing of a wise, tender mother, who trained her early to that strict obedience which alone could make her fit to rule. She was eighteen when she became queen; and at the age of twenty-one she married her first cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe Coburg.

2. One of the first great events of her reign was the repeal of the Corn-laws in 1846, so that foreign corn might be brought into England, without paying any duty to the Government. This makes bread cheaper, and it is therefore a great blessing to the poor. The late eminent Sir Robert Peel was prominent in repealing the Corn-laws. The Hon. Charles Pelham Villiers, John Bright, and the late lamented Richard Cobden, were the first and foremost workers in this good cause.

3. In 1847 came the dreadful Irish famine, caused by the failure of the potato. Immense sums of money

were sent from England for Ireland's relief, but in spite of all, thousands died of hunger, and of disease caused by hunger.

4. In 1854 the Russian war broke out; in which England and France united to prevent Russia from injuring Turkey. It was carried on in the Crimea, and was a terrible war. The English and French gained wonderful victories at Alma, Balaklava, and Inkerman; but it was a bitterly severe winter, and the sufferings of our troops were dreadful, though they bore them with the patient courage of true Englishmen.

5. The English army was commanded by Lord Raglan, a good, brave man, who died in the Crimea. The war was ended by the English and French taking the strong Russian fort of Sebastopol; and the blessings of peace were restored.

6. During the war there was a hospital at Scutari for our wounded soldiers; and an English lady, Florence Nightingale, went out to take care of them, leaving her wealthy, comfortable home to do this. Scutari was an awful place, for it is in an hospital that one best learns all the horrors of war.

7. Miss Nightingale felt so much pity, that she was willing to see all the misery, if she could help them by her great skill and knowledge in nursing. The soldiers blessed her as an angel of mercy, and God gave her strength to do the work to which He had called her, but when it was done her health broke down. I fear that she will never be well again. She has sacrificed herself for others, and all good men will revere her for ever.

8. In 1857 was the horrible mutiny in India. By

this time nearly the whole country, with its millions of people, belonged to the English; but I am afraid that they had not given so much attention to India as was due from a Christian nation. Many of our countrymen who went there were wise, humane men, who would be a blessing wherever they lived. But sometimes careless, reckless men went out, who oppressed the natives, and disgraced the proud name of Englishman.

9. There were many Sepoys, or Hindoo soldiers, in the English army; and they laid a plot to kill all the English people in India. English officers were murdered in a moment by the Sepoys, with whom they had lived for years. The mutiny spread over India, though a few native tribes remained faithful to the English.

10. It was a time of unutterable horror. They sent to England for help, but it could not reach them quickly, for India is a long way off. Great things were done and suffered by our countrymen when India seemed slipping from their hands. They faced every kind of death and danger, that they might do their duty like true Englishmen, at any cost. And not men only. There were English women whose silent courage no words can express, and who died like saints and martyrs.

11. There were some English people in Lucknow who defended themselves against hosts of Sepoys, until help should come. The governor, Sir Henry Lawrence, a great, good man, toiled night and day, till he was mortally wounded in his own room by a shell thrown by the Sepoys; and he died in a few

days, to the despair and grief of those around him, bidding them write upon his tomb, "Here lies Henry Lawrence, who tried to do his duty."

12. At last help came. The noble generals Havelock and Outram with a little band of English soldiers fought their way into Lucknow, and were received with boundless thankfulness. And then Havelock, worn out with toil, became ill, and died with his brave son watching by his side. "I have for forty years so ruled my life," he said as he lay dying, "that when death came I might face it without fear." Like Henry Lawrence he did his duty to the last, and died in saving others.

13. After awhile the gallant Sir Colin Campbell reached Lucknow with more troops; and with wonderful skill he led all the people out of the city to a place of safety, before the Sepoys knew what he was doing. Soon, through God's mercy, the mutiny was entirely subdued.

14. I fear that some Englishmen, maddened by the inhuman deeds of the Sepoys, disgraced themselves by a cruel revenge, when the Sepoys were in their power. But the Governor-General, Lord Canning, and other good men, did all they could to prevent this. And now we hope that England will do far more than she has yet done to benefit India, and by just, merciful rule, show the Hindoos what Christianity really means.

15. The civil war of America, or the struggle between the Southern and Northern States of the Union, while inflicting terrible disasters on that country itself, caused much misfortune to the whole

commercial world. Lancashire, however, from its cotton connection, was the heaviest sufferer. Nearly all the people were thrown out of work; but they bore their privations with a fortitude that earned the sympathies and applause, not only of their own countrymen, but of the whole world.

16. Through more than twenty years has Queen Victoria been honoured by her subjects as a wise sovereign and a good wife and mother. And never did they love her more than in December, 1861, when the whole kingdom was saddened by the death of the Prince Consort. Sympathy with the queen in the greatest sorrow that could possibly befall her was mixed with grief for the loss of that good prince who had come amongst us a stranger, and had taught us in the course of years to know and honour the gifted mind and faithful heart that are now a holy memory.

17. Much has been done in Queen Victoria's reign to improve the condition of the people. National and British Schools have been made more useful by new plans introduced in 1846, when Earl Russell, an unwearied friend of education, was Prime Minister. Reformatories have been built for young criminals, and Ragged Schools for the poorest children.

18. But while thankful for all the blessings and privileges that we enjoy now, we should ever remember that there is still a vast amount of misery, crime, and ignorance among us, and that all the strength of all good men and women, whether rich or poor, is needed to meet these evils.

19. You who are English children to-day will

soon be English men and women; and if you are fit to be called English you will try to do your duty in that station of life to which it shall please God to call you. This is what Alfred the Great did upon his throne; what Sir Humphrey Gilbert did in his sinking vessel; what Lady Rachel Russell did in her home, and afterwards in the world's sight; what George Stephenson did in the coal mine.

20. You must be truthful if you would be truly English, and worthy to be of the same country as that king who was called the "Truth Teller." Some of you who are boys now will yet, perhaps, go to other lands. If you do, so act that all may see that Englishmen are as just and merciful as they are brave.

21. It is God's will that the people of different countries should serve each other, for He has made them all of one blood. If Christ's commands were fully obeyed, there would be no war; and those who live and act in their spirit are helping to this end.

22. But while you honour what is good in every nation, and feel generously and kindly towards all mankind, you may also thankfully acknowledge—"that if the first of your blessings is that of being Christians, the second is beyond all question that of being Englishmen."

1. What laws were repealed in 1846?
2. What calamity occurred in 1847?
3. What caused the Russian War?
4. Name the three great victories of the allies?
5. What happened in India in 1857?
6. How was Lucknow saved?
7. What great calamity inflicted injury on our commerce?
8. What is the moral of our country's story?

APPENDIX A.*

ANALYSIS OF CONTENTS.

Period the First.

CHAPTER I.

Britain under the Romans (B.C. 55—450).

Ancient Britons—Dress and mode of living—Appearance of the country—Dwellings—Mode of fighting—The Druids—The Romans—Invasion by Julius Cæsar—Second invasion—Conquest of Anglesea—Boadicea—Julius Agricola—Results of his rule—The Picts and Scots—Abandonment of the island by the Romans. . . . . Page 1—8.

CHAPTER II.

Saxon conquests (450—871).

Ravages of the Picts and Scots—The Saxon invasion—Their conquests—The Heptarchy—Introduction of Christianity—Augustine—Ethelbert—Paulinus—Egbert—Inroads of the Danes—Their settlement in Britain. Page 8—15.

CHAPTER III.

Alfred the Great (871—901).

His youth—His kingship—His battles with the Danes—His navy—His reverses—His concealment—Summons his nobles—Defeat of the Danes—Guthrun—The Danelagh—How Alfred governed—The benefits he conferred on his country. . . . . Page 15—21.

CHAPTER IV.

Edward the Elder—Edmund Ironside (901—1017).

Conflicts with the Danes—Ethelfleda—Athelstane—Victory over the Danes—Edmund—Edwy and Elgiva—Dunstan—Edgar—Welsh tribute—Elfrida—Edward the martyr—His murder—Ethelred the unready—The Sea-kings—Massacre of the Danes—Danish revenge—Archbishop of Canterbury—Ethelred's flight—Sweyn acknowledged king—His death—Ethelred's return—Struggle between him and Canute—Edmund Ironside—Canute King of all England. . . . . Page 22—28.

CHAPTER V.

The Danish kings and Norman Conquest (1017—1066).

Canute—Edmund Ironside's children—Emma of Normandy—Canute's government—Harold and Hardicanute—Edward the Confessor—Earl Godwin—The Normans—Visit of the Duke of Normandy—Harold's oath to William—Edward the Confessor's death—Harold's accession—Battle with the King of Norway—Battle of Hastings. . . . Page 29—36.

* So framed as to furnish facilities for miscellaneous questions; or material for composition, without the aid of the text.

CHAPTER VI.

Saxon Customs.

Wittenagemot—Governing classes—Condition of the villains—Slaves—Fines—Punishment—Outlawry—Trial by ordeal—Houses of the Anglo-Saxons—Food—Dress—Amusements—Education—Music—Ballads—Occupations of the ladies. . . . . Page 36—41.

CHAPTER VII.

William the Conqueror (1066—1087).

Edgar Atheling—Coronation of William—Resistance of the Saxons—Defeat of the Normans at York—Aldred—Devastation of Northumbria—Guilbert—Hereward's resistance—Treachery of the Monks—The New Forest—Duke Robert's rebellion—Death of William—His funeral—The Feudal System—Domesday book. . . . . Page 42—49.

CHAPTER VIII.

William Rufus (1087—1100).

His treatment of the Saxons—Disputes with his brothers—War in Normandy—Peter the hermit—The Crusades—Robert of Normandy joins them—Jerusalem is taken—Death of William Rufus—Archbishop Anselm. Page 50—55.

CHAPTER IX.

Henry I. (1100—1135).

Takes possession of the royal treasures—His marriage—Robert of Normandy as pretender—Renunciation of claim—His nobles ask Henry's interference—War between the brothers—Robert is defeated—His imprisonment, and death in Cardiff Castle—Fate of his son—Prince William—Wreck of the "White ship," and death of Prince William—The king's grief—Matilda—Marriage to Geoffrey Plantagenet—Settlement of the crown on her. . . . . Page 55—60.

CHAPTER X.

Stephen (1135—1154).

Stephen's Usurpation—Civil war—Desolation of the country—Battle of the Standard—Earl of Gloucester—Stephen taken prisoner—Matilda proclaimed queen—Quarrels with the citizens of London—Flight to Oxford—Defeat—Earl of Gloucester made prisoner—Exchange of prisoners—Matilda's escape from Oxford—Death of the Earl of Gloucester—Henry Plantagenet—Close of the civil war. . . . . Page 60—62.

Period the Second.

CHAPTER XI.

Henry II. (1154—1189).

His marriage—His possessions in France—Gilbert à Becket—Thomas à Becket—As Minister of State—As Archbishop of Canterbury—Disputes between the king and the clergy—Becket's flight—the Pope supports his cause—The interdict—Becket's return—His insolence—The king's anger—Becket's murder—Conquest of Ireland—Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke—Rebellion of the princes—Henry's death—Style of dress—Style of living. Page 65—74.

CHAPTER XII.

Richard I. (1189—1199).

His coronation—Massacre of the Jews—Their defence at York—Their voluntary death—Richard joins the Crusades—His marriage—Siege of Acre—The King of France—The Duke of Austria—His quarrel with Richard—Treaty of peace—Saladin—His death—Mahommedans—Richard leaves Palestine—Is shipwrecked—Imprisoned by the Duke of Austria—Blondel discovers the place of Richard's captivity—His ransom—His return to England—War with France—Richard mortally wounded at the siege of Chaluz—His death—Bertram. . . . . Page 74—80.

CHAPTER XIII.

John (1199—1216).

Prince Arthur—His claim to the crown—Is defeated and made prisoner—His murder—Eleanor of Brittany—Loss of French provinces—John's quarrel with the Pope—Conference of the barons—Their oath—Eustace de Vescy—Robert Fitzwalter and Stephen Langton—Meeting at Runnymede—Magna Carta—John's faithlessness—Barons invite a French prince—Preparations for war—John's death. . . . . Page 81—85.

CHAPTER XIV.

Henry III. (1216—1272).

Disputed succession—His minority—The Earl of Pembroke—Confirmation of Magna Carta—War with France—Eleanor of Provence—Struggle between the king and the barons—Civil war—Prince Edward—Simon de Montfort—Battle of Evesham—Death of Henry III.—Origin of the House of Commons. . . . . Page 86—90.

CHAPTER XV.

Edward I. (1272—1307).

Marries Eleanor of Castile—Joins the Crusades—Prince Llewellyn—Edward seeks a quarrel with him — Conquest of Wales — Death of Llewellyn and his brother—Welsh bards—First English Prince of Wales—Scotland—Death of the Princess Margaret—Bruce and Baliol—Edward's interference—War with Scotland—Sir William Wallace—He is defeated at Falkirk—Betrayed and executed—Edward's death—Earl of Hereford and Earl of Norfolk—Death of Queen Eleanor. . . . . Page 90—95.

CHAPTER XVI.

Edward II. (1307—1327).

His character—Isabella of France—Pierce Gaveston—Anger of the barons—Gaveston is put to death—Edward invades Scotland—Battle of Bannockburn—Robert Bruce—Hugh le Despencer—War between Edward and the barons—Earl of Lancaster—Roger Mortimer—Prince of Wales proclaimed king—Imprisonment and murder of the king—Government of the queen and Mortimer—Mortimer's death and Isabella's captivity. Page 95—98.

CHAPTER XVII.

Edward III. (1327—1377).

Claims the throne of France—Invades France—Battle of Crecy—The Black Prince—Siege of Calais—Conditions of surrender—Eustace de St. Pierre—Queen Philippa—Truce with France—Renewal of the war—Battle of Poitiers—King John of France—Death of the Black Prince—Death of Edward. . . . . Page 98—104.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Richard II. (1377—1399).

His minority—The poll-tax—Rebellion of Wat Tyler—Duke of Gloucester—Banishment of Henry of Lancaster—His return—He raises a large army—Richard is taken prisoner—Henry proclaimed king—Richard's death—John Wickliffe. . . . . Page 104—109.

CHAPTER XIX.

Henry IV. (1399—1413).

The Earl of March—Expedition to Scotland—Owen Glendower—Henry fails to subdue him—Rebellion of the Earl of Northumberland—Civil war—Battle of Shrewsbury—Skirmishes with the French—Execution of the Earl of Nothumberland and Archbishop Scroop—The Prince of Wales—Death of Henry. . . . . Page 110—113.

CHAPTER XX.

Henry V. (1413—1422).

Begins his reign with acts of clemency—Claims the French crown—State of France—Lands at Harfleur—It surrenders to him—Battle of Agincourt—Marries Catherine of France and is declared heir to the French throne—His death—Persecution of the Wickliffites—Execution of Lord Cobham—Style of dress. . . . . Page 113—117.

CHAPTER XXI.

Henry VI. (1422—1461).

Regency appointed in England and France—Misery of France—Battle of Verneuil—Joan of Arc—She raises the siege of Orleans—Is taken prisoner by the English—Her death—Henry is crowned at Paris—Death of the Duke of Bedford—The English leave France—Henry marries Margaret of Anjou—Cade's rebellion—Duke of York's claim to the throne—Wars of the Roses—Battle of St. Albans—Battle of Wakefield Green, and death of York—His son Edward continues the War—Is acknowledged king in London—Battle of Towton—Margaret and her son escape to France—Edward is crowned king. . . . . Page 118—124.

CHAPTER XXII.

Edward IV. (1461—1483).

Lancastrians defeated at Hexham, and Henry taken prisoner—Edward's marriage—the Earl of Warwick—He quarrels with Edward and offers his services to Margaret—Battle of Barnet, and Warwick's death—Battle of Tewkesbury, in which Margaret and her son are taken prisoners—Murder of the young prince—Death of Henry VI.—Death of the Duke of Clarence—Lord Clifford—His son—William Caxton and the invention of Printing. Page 125—129.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Edward V. (1483) Richard III. (1483—1485).

Guardianship of the young king and his brother—Duke of Gloucester gets them in his power—Execution of Lords Hastings, Rivers, Dorset, and Richard Grey—Fate of the little princes—Earl of Richmond—His claim to the throne—Lands at Milford Haven with an army—Battle of Bosworth Field—Death of Richard III.—Style of living. . . . Page 130—134.

Period the Third.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Henry VII. (1485—1509).

Union of the Houses of York and Lancaster—The Earl of Warwick—Simnel's revolt—He raises an army in Ireland—Defeated at York—Perkin Warbeck pretends to be the murdered Duke of York—Received as such in Ireland, &c.—King of Scotland promises him assistance—His marriage—He lands in Cornwall—Proclaimed at Bodmin—Flight and surrender—Attempted escape of Warbeck and the Earl of Warwick—their execution—Lady Catherine Gordon—Empson and Dudley—Columbus and the discovery of America—Sebastian Cabot—Style of dress—Population. Page 137—142.

CHAPTER XXV.

Henry VIII. (1509—1547).

War with France—War with Scotland—Battle of Flodden Field—Marriage of the king's sister—The Field of the Cloth of Gold——Cardinal Wolsey—His humble origin—His ability, wealth and power—Death of the Duke of Buckingham—The Reformation and state of the Romish Church—Martin Luther—His early life—His struggles—His teaching—Diet at Worms—Luther's confession of faith—Protestants. Page 142—150.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Henry VIII. (Continued).

He controverts Luther's opinions—"Defender of the Faith"—He seeks a divorce from Catherine of Arragon—The Pope resists it—Wolsey temporises—His fall—His death—Divorce accomplished—Henry marries Anne Boleyn—Breach with the Pope—Execution of Sir Thomas More and Bishop Fisher—Accusations against Anne Boleyn—Her trial and execution—King marries Jane Seymour—Her death—Anne of Cleves—Execution of Lady Catherine Howard—Catherine Parr—Fate of the Earl of Surrey—Death of Henry—His children—Manners of the time.

Page 150—157.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Edward VI. (1547—1553).

Duke of Somerset declared Protector—Reformation fully established—Treatment of Roman Catholics—Execution of Sir Thomas Seymour—Fall and execution of the Protector—Duke of Northumberland—Joan of Kent—Edward's health fails—Question of the succession—His sisters' claims set aside—Lady Jane Grey declared his successor—His death—Princess Mary asserts her claim—Lady Jane's accession and deposition.

Page 157—162.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

Mary (1553—1558).

Undisputed queen—Execution of Northumberland—Mary's marriage—Sir Thomas Wyatt's rebellion—Execution of Lord Guilford Dudley and Lady Jane Grey—Princess Elizabeth committed to the Tower—Restoration of the Roman Catholic religion—Persecution and martyrdom—Bishops Hooper, Ridley, and Latimer—Archbishop Cranmer—His recantation, confession and death—Bishops Bonner and Gardiner—Cardinal Pole—Loss of Calais—Death of Mary—Her character. . Page 162—169.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Elizabeth (1558—1603).

Her accession—Her character—Her coronation—Her council—Lord Burleigh—Restoration of the Protestant religion—Treatment of the Roman Catholic bishops—The Pope excommunicates all heretical sovereigns—Elizabeth refuses to marry Philip of Spain—First ten years of her reign—Mary Queen of Scots—Asserts a claim to the throne of England—Returns to Scotland—Lord Moray—Mary marries Lord Darnley—David Rizzio—His murder—Birth of James VI.—Mysterious death of Darnley—Earl of Bothwell—His marriage with Mary—Her nobles take up arms—She surrenders and is imprisoned at Lochleven—Resigns her crown to her infant son—Is defeated at Langside—Flies to England—Her imprisonment—Condition of foreign states—Philip's plots—Roman Catholic revolt—Harsh laws. . . . . Page 170—180.

CHAPTER XXX.

Elizabeth (Continued).

Massacre of St. Bartholomew—Death of the Duke of Norfolk—Trial and execution of Mary Queen of Scots—Roman Catholics—Persecution in the Netherlands—English help—Sir Philip Sidney—Spanish Armada—Preparation in England—Lord Howard of Effingham—Elizabeth's address to her army—England's reception of the Armada—Its final defeat—Its destruction—Sir Walter Raleigh—Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Sir Richard Grenville and the Revenge—Earl of Essex—Death of Elizabeth—Summary of the results of her reign—Population of her time—Dress, &c.

Page 180—192.

Period the Fourth.

CHAPTER XXXI.

James I. (1603—1625).

His character—Lady Arabella Stuart—Imprisonment of Raleigh—The Gunpowder Plot—Catesby, Guy Fawkes, &c.—Discovery and death of the conspirators—Death of Prince Henry—Last expedition and death of Sir Walter Raleigh—Villiers, Duke of Buckingham—Death of James.

Page 195—198.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Charles I. (1625—1649).

His characteristics—His marriage—Attempts to assist the King of France—Failure of Spanish expedition—Charles raises revenue illegally—Consents to "Petition of Right"—Murder of Duke of Buckingham—Imprisonment of Sir John Eliot—Lord Strafford and Archbishop Laud—The Puritans—"Ship-money"—John Hampden refuses to pay it—Judge Croke—Attempt to alter the constitution of the Scottish church—War averted by a treaty—Strafford summoned from Ireland—Accused of treason, tried and executed—Laud imprisoned—State of Ireland—King fails to arrest the "Five Members." . . . . . Page 199—205.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Charles I. (Continued).

Calls out his army, and goes to York—Parliament raises an army under Earl of Essex—Oliver Cromwell—Battle of Edgehill—Battle of Chalgrove Field, and death of Hampden—Battle of Newbury, and death of Lord Falkland—"Ironsides"—Victory of Marston Moor—General Fairfax gains battle of Naseby—Execution of Archbishop Laud—Scotch Presbyterians send troops to assist parliament—Duke of Montrose helps the king—Charles goes to the Scotch army—Delivered up by them to the parliament—Imprisonment at Hampton Court—Flight—Confined at Carisbrooke—Trial and execution. . . . . Page 206—215.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Cromwell and his Protectorate (1649—1660).

Commonwealth established—Charles II. proclaimed in Scotland and Ireland—Doings in Ireland—Victory of Dunbar—Victory of Worcester—Cromwell dissolves parliament—Appointed protector—John Milton—Ascendency of Cromwell—Death of Mrs. Claypole—Death of Cromwell. Page 216—220.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Charles II. (1660—1685).

Richard Cromwell resigns the protectorship—General Monk and royalists—Charles II. returns—His character—Trial of Charles the First's judges—Death of Sir Harry Vane—Change of manners and policy—Restoration of the Established Church—Broken faith—Act of Uniformity—Treatment of Nonconformists—Plague in London—Fire of London—Persecution of covenanters—Pretended Roman Catholic plot—Execution of Lord Stafford—Charles's intrigues with France—Lord William and Lady Rachel Russell—Algernon Sidney—Death of Charles—Habeas Corpus Act—John Bunyan. . . . . Page 221—229.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

James II. (1685—1688).

Rebellion of the Duke of Monmouth—Lands in Dorsetshire—Defeat at Sedgmoor—His execution—Colonel Kirke—Judge Jefferys and the "bloody assize"—James's arbitary measures—Sends the seven bishops to the Tower—Their acquittal—Determination to dethrone James—Invitation to William of Orange—James takes refuge in France—Customs and fashions in the time of the Stuarts. . . . . Page 229—235.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

William and Mary (1688—1702).

William's career in Holland—Whig and Tory—Nonjurors—Mary II.—Jacobites—Defence of Derry—Battle of the Boyne—Massacre of Glencoe—William's plans—Death of Mary—Death of William . . Page 235—240.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Anne (1702—1714).

Duchess of Marlborough—Prince George of Denmark—War with France, Spain, and Bavaria—Duke of Marlborough—Battle of Blenheim—Sir George Brooke takes Gibraltar—Peace of Utrecht—The Pretender—Sir Isaac Newton—Daniel Defoe—Sir Christopher Wren—Anne's successor. Page 241—243.

Period the Fifth.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

George I. (1714—1727).

His character—His son—Sophia Dorothea—Jacobite rising on behalf of the Pretender—Their defeat—Severity of the government—Execution of the Earl of Derwentwater—Lord Nithsdale's escape from the Tower—Death of George I. . . . . Page 247—249.

CHAPTER XL.

George II. (1727—1760).

His German tendencies—Queen Caroline—The Prince of Wales and the Duke of Cumberland—Battle of Dettingen—The young Pretender lands in Scotland—Defeats the royal troops at Prestonpans—Death of Col. Gardiner—Charles Edward finally defeated at Culloden—His escape—Seven years' war—Lord Clive and India—General Wolfe's capture of Quebec—Death of George II.—Manners and customs. Page 249—253.

CHAPTER XLI.

George III. (1760—1820).

The longest reign in English history—His character—Illustrious Englishmen—Loss of North American colonies—Irish rebellion—French revolution—Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette—"The reign of terror"—Napoleon Bonaparte—His wars—Lord Nelson and the battle of Trafalgar—Wellington's success in Spain—Napoleon's invasion of Russia—He goes to Elba—"Reign of a hundred days"—Battle of Waterloo—Napoleon sent to St. Helena—Abolition of the slave trade—Wilberforce and Clarkson—Dr. Jenner—Bell and Lancaster—Education—Death of George III.

Page 254—257.

CHAPTER XLII.

George IV. (1820—1830).

Catholic Emancipation Bill—Repeal of the Test and Corporation Acts—Battle of Navarino—Caroline of Brunswick—Princess Charlotte—Her marriage with Prince Leopold—Her death—Death of George IV.

Page 258—259.

CHAPTER XLIII.

William IV. (1830—1837).

Enters the navy as a midshipman—Queen Adelaide—Earl Grey, Earl Russell, and the Reform Bill—Abolition of colonial slavery—Sir T. F. Buxton—Opening of the first railway—Locomotive engines—Trevithick and Stephenson—James Watt and the steam engine—Death of William IV.

Page 259—261.

CHAPTER XLIV.

Victoria Alexandrina (1837).

Duke of Kent—Queen's marriage with Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg—Repeal of the Corn Laws—Sir Robert Peel—Villiers, Cobden and Bright—Irish famine—War with Russia—Alma, Balaklava, and Inkerman—Lord Raglan—Taking of Sebastopol by the allies—Scutari—Florence Nightingale—Indian mutiny—Defence of Lucknow—Death of Sir Henry Lawrence—Outram and Havelock enter Lucknow—Death of Sir Henry Havelock—Sir Colin Campbell relieves Lucknow—Civil war in America, and cotton famine in Lancashire—Death of the Prince Consort—Efforts to improve the condition of the people—Earl Russell—Concluding remarks.

Page 261—267.

APPENDIX B.

Chronological Summary of Events.

YEAR.		PAGE
55.	B. C. Roman invasion under Julius Cæsar	4
450.	Invasion of the Saxons	9
596.	Introduction of Christianity	11
1017.	Ascendency of the Danes	29
1066.	Norman conquest	35
1096.	First Crusade	53
1156.	Treaty of Winchester (between Stephen and Henry Plantagenet)	62
1172.	Conquest of Ireland	71
1215.	Signing of Magna Carta	84
1225.	Confirmation of Magna Carta	87
1265.	Beginning of the House of Commons	89
1265.	Battle of Evesham	87
1283.	Conquest of Wales	92
1295.	War with Scotland	94
1298.	Battle of Falkirk	94
1314.	,, ,, Bannockburn	96
1346.	,, ,, Crecy	99
1346.	Siege of Calais	100
1356.	Battle of Poitiers	102
1358.	Treaty of Bretigny	102
1381.	Wat Tyler's rebellion	106
1403.	Battle of Shrewsbury	111
1415.	Battle of Agincourt	115
1420.	Treaty of Troyes (marriage of Henry V.)	116
1429.	Siege of Orleans raised	119
1430.	Death of Joan of Arc	120
1451.	Loss of France	121
1455—1471.	Wars of the Roses	122
1474 (about).	Introduction of Printing	129
1485.	Battle of Bosworth Field	133
1487.	Simnel's revolt	137
1499.	Perkin Warbeck and Earl of Warwick executed	139
1513.	Battle of Flodden Field	142
1529.	Wolsey's fall and death	151
1534.	Church of England separated from that of Rome	152
1535.	Execution of Sir Thomas More	152
1554.	Wyatt's rebellion	163
1554.	Execution of Lady Jane Grey	164
1554.	England reconciled to the Pope	165
1555.	Martyrdom of Ridley, Latimer and Cranmer	165

YEAR.		PAGE
1558.	Calais taken by the French	168
1559.	Restoration of the Protestant religion	171
1587.	Execution of Mary Queen of Scots	182
1588.	Destruction of the Armada	188
1605.	Gunpowder Plot	195
1628.	Petition of Right	200
1634.	Ship-money levied	202
1642.	Attempt to arrest the Five Members.	205
1642.	Battle of Edgehill	207
1644.	„ „ Marston Moor	208
1645.	„ „ Naseby	209
1649.	Execution of Charles I.	213
1650.	Battle of Dunbar	217
1651.	„ „ Worcester	217
1653.	Cromwell declared Protector	218
1662.	Act of Uniformity	223
1665.	Plague of London	222
1666.	Fire of London	224
1670.	Persecution of Covenanters	225
1679.	Habeas Corpus Act passed	229
1685.	Battle of Sedgmoor	230
1688.	Acquittal of the seven Bishops	231
1688.	William of Orange and Revolution	236
1689.	Seige of Derry raised	237
1690.	Battle of the Boyne	238
1692.	Massacre of Glencoe	238
1704.	Battle of Blenheim	241
1704.	Taking of Gibraltar	241
1713.	Peace of Utrecht	241
1745.	Battle of Prestonpans	250
1746.	„ „ Culloden	251
1776.	Loss of American Colonies	254
1798.	Irish rebellion	254
1805.	Battle of Trafalgar	255
1807.	Abolition of Slave-trade	256
1815.	Battle of Waterloo	256
1827.	„ „ Navarino	258
1828.	Repeal of Test and Corporation Acts	258
1829.	Catholic Emancipation Bill passed	258
1830.	First railway opened	260
1832.	Reform Bill passed	259
1834.	Abolition of Colonial slavery	260
1846.	Repeal of corn-laws	261
1847.	Irish famine	261
1854.	War with Russia	262
1857.	Indian mutiny	262

APPENDIX C.

Principal Foreign Possessions of Great Britain,

WITH THE DATE OF THEIR ACQUISITION.

IN EUROPE.

Gibraltar (taken from Spain, 1704).

Malta (surrendered to British squadron, 1800).

Gozo, and Heligoland.

IN ASIA.

India (East India Company formed by royal charter, 1600). First factories erected by leave of Mogul, 1611.

First Territorial Acquisition on which Madras was built, 1639.

Second Territorial Acquisition is the Island of Bombay, given to the company by Charles II., who received it as part of Catherine of Braganza's dower, 1668.

Acquisition of Bengal, and battle of Plassey, 1757. With the acquisition of Scinde in 1843; of the Punjaub in 1849, and of Oude in 1856, the British conquest of India, continued at intervals through the intervening years, was completed. The company was dissolved, and its powers transferred to the crown in 1858.

Ceylon (capture, and cession, by treaty of Amiens, 1802).

Hongkong (ceded by China, 1842), &c., &c.

IN AFRICA.

Cape of Good Hope (taken from Holland, 1806).

Caffraria (separated from the Cape Colony, 1860).

Natal (settled, 1824).

Sierra Leone (settled, 1787), with settlements on the Gold Coast, &c.

IN AMERICA.

Upper and Lower Canada (taken from France, 1759).

Hudson's Bay Territory (company established, 1670).

Newfoundland (first settled in 1610).

New Brunswick and Nova Scotia (lands first granted by James I). Confirmed to England by Peace of Utrecht, 1713.

British Columbia (settled 1858), &c.

In the West Indies—Jamaica (taken from Spain, 1655).

Barbadoes (settled 1624).

The Bahamas (settled 1629)—restored to Great Britain, 1783), &c., &c.

British Guiana (ceded 1814).

IN THE PACIFIC.

Australia (first colonized as a penal settlement in 1788), which includes New South Wales, Western Australia, South Australia, Victoria, and Queensland.

Tasmania (settled 1804) and New Zealand (settled 1839).

Now Ready, 192 pp., Foolscap 8vo., limp, 1s.; board, 1s. 6d.; superior edition, 2s.; also in three parts, 4d. each, and in Six Sections, 2d. each.

THE MANUAL OF ENGLISH SPELLING,

BY J. S. LAURIE,

Formerly Her Majesty's Inspector of Schools.

The leading design of this work has been to bring the chief practical difficulties of English spelling within a reasonable compass, and to arrange them progressively in a set of rationally assorted lessons, to impress the words on the mind, either by giving their meaning or showing their application in illustrative examples, and to present facilities for the reproduction of the whole in the form of special exercises.

---

160 pp. Foolscap, 8vo., Limp, 1s.; Cloth Boards, 1s. 6d.; Superior Edition, 2s.,

THE ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY,

A Text Book for Colleges and Schools,

BY W. C. PEARCE and SAMUEL HAGUE, L.L.B.

A novel feature of this work is, that while the events of each reign or period are subjected to a most detailed analysis, the sequence of the historical narrative remains unbroken. Thus, while all the advantages derivable from classification in the study of history are secured, the very obvious drawback occasioned by an incessant interruption of the current of events, characteristic of some of the more popular elementary text books on history, is avoided. Another important feature will be found in the varied typography employed, by which (1) a skeleton, or ground plan of the whole subject is presented in bold type; and (2) the relative importance of the various occurrence is to some extent shewn also.

These features render the work one of special utility to students reading for civil service, and other government examinations; and to pupils preparing for the Oxford local examinations.

Second and Third Editions,

MANUSCRIPT ARITHMETIC,

Progressive and Practical, for use in all Schools, Public and Private,

BY A SCHOOL MANAGER.

PUBLIC SCHOOL EDITION,

BOOKS OF EXAMPLES IV., V., VI., Stiff Wrapper, 2d. Each.

EXERCISE BOOKS, Nos. 1 and 2, for Examples IV., and Nos. 1, 2, and 3 each, for Examples V. and VI., price 2d. each. Key to the whole, 4d.

PRIVATE SCHOOL EDITION,

The EXAMPLES, Complete, Stiff Wrapper, 6d.; Cloth, 8d.

EXERCISE BOOKS, Series IV., price 6d.; Series V. and VI., price 8d. each. Key, Cloth, 6d.

*** This work is received with favor wherever it has been introduced. It is recommended by several of H.M. Inspectors of Schools, and the Private School Edition has been prepared at the special request of Private School Teachers.

LONDON:

THOMAS MURBY, 32, BOUVERIE STREET, FLEET STREET;

SIMPKIN and CO., E.C.

READING BOOKS

EDITED BY

JAMES STUART LAURIE.

FORMERLY ONE OF H.M. INSPECTORS OF SCHOOLS.

New and Greatly Improved Editions, Strongly bound in cloth. Each with Frontispiece illustration.

The First 'Standard' Reader; or, Tales and Rhymes.
64 pp. Cloth, 4d.

"Every lesson is replete with interest, every sentence conveys a distinct idea, exciting feelings of wonder and pleasure."

The Second 'Standard' Reader; or Tales of Children.
96 pp. Cloth boards, 6d.

"Such a collection of simple, cheerful, healthful stories does not exist in the language at any price; they enchant, but do not bewilder; they rivet the attention, but do not fatigue the mind."

The Third 'Standard' Reader; or, Stories of Animals.
160 pp. Cloth boards, 9d.

"The stories are varied in character, and full of interest and beauty, calculated to beget feelings of admiration, affection, and intelligent observation."

The Fourth 'Standard' Reader; or, Fables and Parables. 192 pp. Cloth boards, 1s.

"This 'Reader' consists of fables and parables in prose and verse, and is designed to afford materials for the direct exercise of the moral sentiments and reflective faculties, the moral in most of the stories being put in the form of a question, and wisely left for the pupil to answer for himself."

The Fifth 'Standard' Reader; or, Poetry and Adventure. 256 pp. Cloth boards, 1s. 2d.

"It is a beautiful gem in school literature, exceedingly good, and remarkably cheap; introducing the pupil to some of the best lyrical pieces of the best writers in our language."

The Sixth 'Standard' Reader; or, Descriptive Sketches. 320 pp. Cloth boards, 1s. 4d.

"'The Sixth Standard Reader' contains instructive lessons on natural history, descriptive geography, biography, history, and some of the practical utilities of life, interspersed with poems. The volume concludes with a selection of pieces for recitation. It is literally crowded with first-class matter on subjects of vital interest."

"We should greatly fail in the duty we owe to our readers, were we not to recommend the 'Standard Readers' to their attention. As a set of reading books they are eminently adapted for their purpose, and the cost is very moderate."—*Papers for the Schoolmaster.*

"The 'Standard Readers' are characterised by variety, freshness, simplicity, and interest, and we therefore recommend them."—*Educational Paper.*

THOMAS MURBY, 32, BOUVERIE STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C.
SIMPKIN AND CO., STATIONERS' HALL COURT, E.C.